

# Controllability of parabolic PDES : old and new

Franck Boyer

[franck.boyer@math.univ-toulouse.fr](mailto:franck.boyer@math.univ-toulouse.fr)

Master 2 Mathematics and Applications

Université Paul Sabatier - Toulouse 3

June 9, 2018

This work is licensed under a [Creative Commons “Attribution - NonCommercial - ShareAlike 4.0 International”](#) license.



# Contents

<b>I</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>1</b>
1	What is it all about ?	1
2	Examples	2
2.1	The stupid example	3
2.2	The rocket	4
2.3	Nonlinear examples	6
2.4	PDE examples	7
<b>II</b>	<b>Controllability of linear ordinary differential equations</b>	<b>11</b>
1	Preliminaries	11
1.1	Exact representation formula	11
1.2	Duality	12
1.3	Reachable states. Control spaces	12
2	Kalman criterion. Unique continuation	13
3	Fattorini-Hautus test	17
4	The moments method	19
5	Linear-Quadratic optimal control problems	21
5.1	Framework	21
5.2	Main result. Adjoint state	22
5.3	Justification of the gradient computation	25
5.4	Ricatti equation	25
6	The HUM control	27
7	How much it costs ? Observability inequalities	29
<b>III</b>	<b>Controllability of abstract parabolic PDEs</b>	<b>37</b>
1	General setting	37
2	Examples	39
3	Controllability - Observability	40
<b>IV</b>	<b>The heat equation</b>	<b>45</b>
1	Further spectral properties and applications	46
1.1	The 1D case	47
1.2	Proof of the biorthogonal family bounds	54
1.3	The multi-D case	60
2	The method of Lebeau and Robbiano	62
3	Global elliptic Carleman estimates and applications	69
3.1	The basic computation	69
3.2	Proof of the boundary Carleman estimate	71
3.3	Proof of the distributed Carleman estimate	73
3.4	Construction of the weight functions	74
3.5	A Carleman estimate for augmented elliptic operators with special boundary conditions	75

4	The Fursikov-Imanuvilov approach . . . . .	76
4.1	Global parabolic Carleman estimates . . . . .	76
4.2	Another proof of the null-controllability of the heat equation . . . . .	77
<b>V</b>	<b>Coupled parabolic equations</b>	<b>79</b>
1	Systems with as many controls as components . . . . .	79
2	Boundary versus distributed controllability . . . . .	81
3	Distributed control problems . . . . .	81
3.1	Constant coefficient systems with less controls than equations . . . . .	81
3.2	Variable coefficient cascade systems - The good case . . . . .	85
3.3	Variable coefficient cascade systems - The not so good case . . . . .	86
4	Boundary controllability results for 1D systems . . . . .	90
<b>A</b>	<b>Appendices</b>	<b>95</b>
1	Non-autonomous linear ODEs. Resolvent . . . . .	95
2	Linear ODEs with integrable data . . . . .	95

# Chapter I

## Introduction

**Disclaimer :** Those lecture notes are far from being complete and many references of the literature are lacking. It still contains almost surely many mistakes, inaccuracies or typos. Any reader is encouraged to send me<sup>1</sup> any comments or suggestions.

### 1 What is it all about ?

We shall consider a very unprecise setting for the moment : let a (differential) dynamical system

$$\begin{cases} y' = F(t, y, v(t)), \\ y(0) = y_0, \end{cases} \quad (\text{I.1})$$

in which the user can act on the system through the input  $v$ . Here,  $y$  (resp.  $v$ ) live in a state space  $E$  (resp. a control space  $U$ ) which are finite dimensional spaces (the ODE case) or in infinite dimensional spaces (the PDE case).

We assume (for simplicity) that the functional setting is such that (I.1) is globally well-posed for any initial data

---

<sup>1</sup>[franck.boyer@math.univ-toulouse.fr](mailto:franck.boyer@math.univ-toulouse.fr)

$y_0$  and any control  $v$  in a suitable functional space.

### Definition I.1.1

Let  $y_0 \in E$ . We say that:

- **(I.1) is exactly controllable from  $y_0$**  if : for any  $y_T \in E$ , there exists a control  $v : (0, T) \rightarrow U$  such that the corresponding solution  $y_{v, y_0}$  of (I.1) satisfies

$$y_{v, y_0}(T) = y_T.$$

If this property holds for any  $y_0$ , we simply say that the system is **exactly controllable**.

- **(I.1) is approximately controllable from  $y_0$**  if : for any  $y_T \in E$ , and any  $\varepsilon > 0$ , there exists a control  $v : (0, T) \rightarrow U$  such that the corresponding solution  $y_{v, y_0}$  of (I.1) satisfies

$$\|y_{v, y_0}(T) - y_T\|_E \leq \varepsilon.$$

If this property holds for any  $y_0$ , we simply say that the system is **approximately controllable**.

- **(I.1) is controllable to the trajectories from  $y_0$**  if : for any  $\bar{y}_0 \in E$ , and any  $\bar{v} : (0, T) \rightarrow U$ , there exists a control  $v : (0, T) \rightarrow U$  such that the corresponding solution  $y_{v, y_0}$  of (I.1) satisfies

$$y_{v, y_0}(T) = y_{\bar{v}, \bar{y}_0}(T).$$

If this property holds for any  $y_0$ , we simply say that the system is **controllable to trajectories**.

It is clear from the definitions that

exact controllability  $\implies$  approximate controllability,

exact controllability  $\implies$  controllability to trajectories.

Moreover, for **linear problems** we have

controllability to trajectories  $\implies$  null-controllability,

and it can be often observed that

controllability to trajectories  $\implies$  approximate controllability.

We will possibly also discuss about related topics like :

- **Optimal control** : find  $v$  such that the couple  $(y, v)$  satisfies some optimality criterion.
- **Closed-loop stabilisation** : Assume that 0 is an unstable fixed point of  $y \mapsto F(y, 0)$  (we assume here that  $F$  is autonomous), does it exist an operator  $K$  such that, if we define the control  $v = Ky$ , then 0 becomes an asymptotically stable fixed point of  $y' = F(y, Ky)$ .

## 2 Examples

Let us present a few examples.

## 2.1 The stupid example

$$\begin{cases} y' + \lambda y = v, \\ y(0) = y_0. \end{cases}$$

We want to drive  $y$  to a target  $y_T$ . Take any smooth function  $y$  that satisfy  $y(0) = y_0$  and  $y(T) = y_T$  and set  $v = y' - \lambda y$  and we are done ... Of course there is much more to say on this example, like finding an *optimal* control in some sense.

Let us write the solution explicitly as a function of  $y_0$  and  $v$

$$y(t) = e^{-\lambda t} y_0 + \int_0^t e^{-\lambda(t-s)} v(s) ds.$$

It follows that  $y(T) = y_T$  for some  $v$ , if we have

$$\int_0^T e^{-\lambda(T-s)} v(s) ds = y_T - e^{-\lambda T} y_0.$$

Any function satisfying this integral condition will be a solution of our problem. It is clear that there exists plenty of such admissible functions.

- Let us try to consider a constant control  $v(s) = M$  for any  $s \in [0, T]$  and for some  $M$ . The equation to be solved is

$$M \frac{1 - e^{-\lambda T}}{\lambda} = y_T - e^{-\lambda T} y_0.$$

It follows that

$$M = \lambda \frac{y_T - e^{-\lambda T} y_0}{1 - e^{-\lambda T}}.$$

The  $L^2$  norm on  $[0, T]$  of this control is given by

$$\|v\|_{L^2(0,T)} = |M| \sqrt{T}.$$

- If  $y_T \neq 0$ , we thus have

$$\|v\|_{L^2(0,T)} \sim_{\lambda \rightarrow +\infty} \lambda \sqrt{T} |y_T|.$$

This proves that the cost of such a control blows up as  $\lambda \rightarrow \infty$ .

This is natural since the equation is more dissipative when  $\lambda$  is large and thus the system has more difficulties to achieve a non zero state.

- Conversely, if  $y_T = 0$ , we have

$$\|v\|_{L^2(0,T)} \sim_{\lambda \rightarrow +\infty} \lambda \sqrt{T} |y_0| e^{-\lambda T},$$

and thus the cost of the control is asymptotically small when  $\lambda$  is large.

- Why do not take an exponential control ? For a given  $\mu \in \mathbb{R}$ , we set

$$v(t) = M e^{-\mu(T-t)},$$

the controllability condition reads

$$M \frac{1 - e^{-(\lambda+\mu)T}}{\lambda + \mu} = y_T - e^{-\lambda T} y_0,$$

so that

$$M = (\lambda + \mu) \frac{y_T - e^{-\lambda T} y_0}{1 - e^{-(\lambda+\mu)T}}.$$

What is the  $L^2$  norm of such a control

$$\begin{aligned} \int_0^T |v(t)|^2 dt &= M^2 \frac{1 - e^{-2\mu T}}{2\mu} \\ &= \frac{(\lambda + \mu)^2 (y_T - e^{-\lambda T} y_0)^2}{2\mu (1 - e^{-(\lambda + \mu)T})^2} (1 - e^{-2\mu T}). \end{aligned}$$

We will see later that this quantity is minimal for  $\mu = \lambda$  and we then obtain

$$\int_0^T |v(t)|^2 dt = 2\lambda \frac{(y_T - e^{-\lambda T} y_0)^2}{(1 - e^{-2\lambda T})^2} (1 - e^{-2\lambda T}),$$

so that

$$\|v\|_{L^2(0,T)} \sim_{\lambda \rightarrow +\infty} \sqrt{2\lambda} |y_T|.$$

Observe that this cost behaves like  $\sqrt{\lambda}$  for large  $\lambda$  compared to the constant control case which behaves like  $\lambda$  for large  $\lambda$ .

## 2.2 The rocket

We consider a rocket which is trying to land on the ground. The rocket is supposed to be a single material point (!) and the motion is 1D (in the vertical direction). Let  $x$  be the altitude of the rocket and  $y$  its vertical velocity. The initial altitude is denoted by  $x_0 > 0$  and the initial velocity is denoted by  $y_0$  (we assume  $y_0 \leq 0$  without loss of generality).

The control  $v$  is the force generated by the engines of the rocket. The equations of motion of this very simple example are

$$\begin{cases} x'(t) = y(t), \\ y'(t) = v(t) - g, \\ x(0) = x_0 > 0, \\ y(0) = y_0 \leq 0, \end{cases}$$

The goal is to land the rocket at time  $T$ : we want  $x(T) = y(T) = 0$ .

An explicit computation leads to

$$\begin{cases} y(t) = y_0 - gt + \int_0^t v(s) ds, \\ x(t) = h_0 + \int_0^t y(\tau) d\tau = h_0 + y_0 t - \frac{1}{2}gt^2 + \int_0^t v(s)(t-s) ds. \end{cases}$$

We conclude that, for a given  $T > 0$ , the control law  $v$  does the job if and only if it satisfies

$$\begin{cases} \int_0^T v(s) ds = gT + |y_0|, \\ \int_0^T v(s)s ds = \frac{1}{2}gT^2 + h_0. \end{cases} \quad (\text{I.2})$$

This is our first (and not last !) contact with a *moment's problem*.

There is clearly an infinite number of solutions to the system (I.2). Let us try to build two examples:

- For some  $T_0 \in (0, T)$  and some  $M > 0$  to be fixed later, we look for a control of the following form

$$v(t) = \begin{cases} M & \text{for } t < T_0, \\ 0 & \text{for } t > T_0. \end{cases}$$



System (I.2) leads to

$$\begin{aligned} MT_0 &= gT + |y_0|, \\ M \frac{T_0^2}{2} &= \frac{1}{2}gT^2 + h_0. \end{aligned}$$

This can be solved as follows

$$T_0 = \frac{gT^2 + 2h_0}{gT + |y_0|},$$

and

$$M = \frac{(gT + |y_0|)^2}{gT^2 + 2h_0}.$$

Note that the condition  $T_0 \leq T$  gives

$$2h_0 \leq |y_0|T,$$

which mean that such a solution is possible only for a control time  $T$  large enough.

- For some  $\alpha, \beta$  to be fixed later, we set

$$v(t) = \alpha + \beta t, \quad \forall t \in (0, T).$$

System (I.2) leads to

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha T + \beta \frac{T^2}{2} &= gT + |y_0|, \\ \alpha \frac{T^2}{2} + \beta \frac{T^3}{3} &= \frac{1}{2}gT^2 + h_0, \end{aligned}$$

that we can solve explicitly

$$\begin{aligned} \beta \frac{T^3}{12} &= h_0 - \frac{T|y_0|}{2}, \\ \alpha \frac{T^2}{8} &= \frac{h_0}{4} + \frac{1}{8}gT^2 - h_0 + \frac{T|y_0|}{2}, \end{aligned}$$

to obtain

$$v(t) = \left( g + \frac{|y_0|}{T} \right) + (t - T/2) \left( \frac{12h_0}{T^3} - \frac{6|y_0|}{T^2} \right). \quad (\text{I.3})$$

We observe that there is no condition on the time  $T$  for this solution to be a mathematical solution of our problem. However, we have

$$\max_{[0, T]} |v(t)| \sim_{T \rightarrow 0} \frac{6h_0}{T^2},$$

which proves that, for small control times  $T$ , the magnitude of the necessary power of the engines may be infinite. This is of course not reasonable.

Similarly, for a *real* rocket, we expect  $v$  to be a non negative function. Looking at the expression above, we see that the non-negativity of  $v$  holds if and only if the following condition holds

$$|6h_0 - 3|y_0|T| \leq gT^2 + |y_0|T.$$

Here also, this condition is satisfied if  $T$  is large enough and certainly not satisfied for small values of  $T$ . It thus seems that this particular control is not physically admissible for small control times  $T$ .

The above solution defined in (I.3) is nevertheless interesting (from a modeling and mathematical point of view) since we can show that it is, for a given  $T$ , the unique solution among all possible solutions which has a minimal  $L^2$  norm.

$$\int_0^T |v(t)|^2 dt = \operatorname{argmin}_{w \text{ admissible}} \int_0^T |w(t)|^2 dt.$$

Let us prove this in few lines : if  $w : [0, T] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is a control function that drives the solution at rest at time  $T$ , then it also solves the equations (I.2) and in particular we have

$$\int_0^T (v - w)(s) ds = 0,$$

$$\int_0^T s(v - w)(s) ds = 0.$$

Since  $v$  is a linear function, that is a combination of  $s \mapsto 1$  and  $s \mapsto s$ , the above relations give

$$\int_0^T v(v - w) ds = 0.$$

This means that  $v - w$  is orthogonal to  $v$  in  $L^2$  and the Pythagorean theorem leads to

$$\|w\|_{L^2}^2 = \|(w - v) + v\|_{L^2}^2 = \|w - v\|_{L^2}^2 + \|v\|_{L^2}^2 \geq \|v\|_{L^2}^2,$$

with equality if and only if  $v = w$ .

The solution  $v$  is thus the optimal cost control with this particular definition of the cost.

### Exercise I.2.2 (The damped rocket model)

*In practice, the command of the pilot is not instantaneously transmitted to the rocket. To model this behavior, we introduce a delay time  $\tau > 0$  and replace the previous model with the following one*

$$\begin{cases} x'(t) = y(t), \\ y'(t) = w(t) - g, \\ w'(t) = \frac{1}{\tau}(v(t) - w(t)), \\ x(0) = x_0 > 0, \\ y(0) = y_0 \leq 0, \\ w(0) = 0. \end{cases}$$

*By using the same approach as before, show that the previous system is controllable at any time  $T > 0$ . Compute explicitly such controls and try to find the one with minimal  $L^2(0, T)$  norm.*

## 2.3 Nonlinear examples

We consider a nonlinear autonomous (this is just for simplicity) ODE system of the form (I.1) and we assume that  $F(0, 0) = 0$  in such a way that  $(y, v) = 0$  is a solution of the system. We would like to study the local controllability of the nonlinear system. To this end, we consider the linearized system

$$y' = Ay + Bv, \tag{I.4}$$

where  $A = D_y F(0, 0)$  and  $B = D_v F(0, 0)$  are the partial Jacobian matrices of  $F$  with respect to the state and the control variable respectively.

We will not discuss this point in detail but the general philosophy is the following:

- **Positive linear test:**

If the linearized system (I.4) around  $(0, 0)$  is controllable, then the initial nonlinear system (I.1) is locally controllable at any time  $T > 0$ . More precisely, it means that for any  $T > 0$ , there exists  $\varepsilon > 0$  such that for any  $y_0, y_T \in \mathbb{R}^n$  satisfying  $\|y_0\| \leq \varepsilon$  and  $\|y_T\| \leq \varepsilon$ , there exists a control  $v \in L^\infty(0, T, \mathbb{R}^m)$  such that the solution of (I.1) starting at  $y_0$  satisfies  $y(T) = y_T$ .

- **Negative linear test:**

Unfortunately (or fortunately !) it happens that the linear test is not sufficient to determine the local controllability of a nonlinear system around an equilibrium. In other words : *nonlinearity helps !*

There exists systems such that the linearized system is not controllable and that are nevertheless controllable.

- The nonlinear spring:

$$y'' = -ky(1 + Cy^2) + v(t).$$

The linearized system around the equilibrium ( $y = 0, v = 0$ ) is

$$y'' = -ky + v,$$

which is a controllable system (exercise ...). Therefore, we may prove that the nonlinear system is also controllable locally around the equilibrium  $y = y' = 0$ .

- The baby troller: This is an example taken from [Cor07].

The unknowns of this system are the 2D coordinates  $(y_1, y_2)$  of the center of mass of the troller, and the direction  $y_3$  of the troller (that is the angle with respect to any fixed direction). There are two controls  $v_1$  and  $v_2$  since the *pilot* can push the troller in the direction given by  $y_3$  (with a velocity  $v_1$ ) or turn the troller (with an angular velocity  $v_2$ ). The set of equations is then

$$\begin{cases} y_1' = v_1 \cos(y_3), \\ y_2' = v_1 \sin(y_3), \\ y_3' = v_2. \end{cases}$$

Observe that any point  $\bar{y} \in \mathbb{R}^3, \bar{v} = 0 \in \mathbb{R}^2$  is an equilibrium of the system. The linearized system around this equilibrium reads

$$\begin{cases} y_1' = v_1 \cos(\bar{y}_3), \\ y_2' = v_1 \sin(\bar{y}_3), \\ y_3' = v_2. \end{cases}$$

It is clear that this system is not controllable since the quantity

$$\sin(\bar{y}_3)y_1 - \cos(\bar{y}_3)y_2,$$

does not depend on time.

It follows that the (even local) controllability of the nonlinear system is much more difficult to prove ... and actually cannot rely on usual linearization arguments. However, it is true that the nonlinear system is locally controllable, see [Cor07].

## 2.4 PDE examples

- The transport equation : Boundary control

Let  $y_0 : (0, L) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  and  $c > 0$ , we consider the following controlled problem

$$\begin{cases} \partial_t y + c \partial_x y = 0, \quad \forall (t, x) \in (0, +\infty) \times (0, L), \\ y(0, x) = y_0(x), \quad \forall x \in (0, L), \\ y(t, 0) = v(t). \end{cases} \quad (\text{I.5})$$

When posed on the whole space  $\mathbb{R}$ , the exact solution of the transport problem reads

$$y(t, x) = y_0(c - xt), \quad \forall t \geq 0, \forall x \in \mathbb{R}.$$

This can be proved by showing that the solution is constant along (backward) characteristics. In presence of an inflow boundary, the same property holds but it may happen that the characteristics touch the boundary at some positive time. In this case, the boundary condition has to be taken into account.

Therefore, for a given  $y_0$  and  $v$ , the unique solution to Problem (I.5) is given by

$$y(t, x) = \begin{cases} y_0(x - ct), & \text{for } x \in (0, L), t < x/c, \\ v(t - x/c), & \text{for } x \in (0, L), t > x/c. \end{cases}$$

In the limit case  $t = x/c$  there is an over-determination of the solution that cannot be solved in general. It follows that, even if  $y_0$  and  $v$  are smooth, the solution is a **weak** solution which is possibly discontinuous. If, additionally, the initial condition and the boundary data satisfy the compatibility condition

$$y_0(x = 0) = v(t = 0),$$

then the exact solution is continuous.

### Theorem I.2.3

– If  $T \geq L/c$  the transport problem is exactly controllable at time  $T$ , for initial data and target in  $L^2(0, L)$  and with a control in  $L^2(0, T)$ .

If additionally we have  $T > L/c$  and  $y_0, y_T$  are smooth, then we can find a smooth control  $v$  that produces a smooth solution  $y$ .

– If  $T < L/c$  the transport problem is not even approximately controllable at time  $T$ .

- The heat equation : distributed internal control acting everywhere.

Let  $y_0 : (0, L) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ , we consider the following controlled problem

$$\begin{cases} \partial_t y - \partial_x^2 y = v(t, x), & \forall (t, x) \in (0, +\infty) \times (0, L), \\ y(0, x) = y_0(x), & \forall x \in (0, L), \\ y(t, 0) = y(t, L) = 0, & \forall t > 0. \end{cases} \quad (\text{I.6})$$

Take  $L = \pi$  to simplify the computations. We look for  $y, v$  as a development in Fourier series

$$y(t, x) = \sqrt{2/\pi} \sum_{n \geq 1} y_n(t) \sin(nx),$$

$$v(t, x) = \sqrt{2/\pi} \sum_{n \geq 1} v_n(t) \sin(nx).$$

For each  $n$  the equation (I.6) gives

$$y_n'(t) + n^2 y_n(t) = v_n(t),$$

where  $y_n(0) = y_{n,0} = \sqrt{2/\pi} \int_0^\pi y_0(x) \sin(nx) dx$  is the  $n$ -th Fourier coefficient of the initial data  $y_0$ . We try to achieve a state  $y_T \in L^2(\Omega)$  whose Fourier coefficients are given  $y_{n,T}$ .

For each  $n$  we thus have to build a control  $v_n$  for a single ODE. We have seen that there are many solutions to do so. We need to take care of this choice since, at the end, we need to justify the convergence in some sense of the series that defines  $v$ .

- **Reachable set from 0.** We assume that  $y_0 = 0$  and we would like to understand what kind of targets can be achieved and the related regularity of the control.

- \* If we choose  $v_n$  to be constant in time, the computations of Section 2.1 show that

$$v_n(t) = \frac{n^2 y_{n,T}}{1 - e^{-n^2 T}} \sim_{+\infty} n^2 y_{n,T}.$$

Formally, we have thus found a time independent control  $v$  that reads

$$v(x) = \sqrt{2/\pi} \sum_{n \geq 1} \frac{n^2 y_{n,T}}{1 - e^{-n^2 T}} \sin(nx).$$

The question is : what is the meaning of this series. Does it converges in  $L^2(0, \pi)$  for instance ? We see that

$$\begin{aligned} v \in L^2(0, \pi) &\Leftrightarrow y_T \in H^2(0, \pi) \cap H_0^1(0, \pi), \\ v \in H^{-1}(0, \pi) &\Leftrightarrow y_T \in H_0^1(0, \pi), \\ v \in H^{-2}(0, \pi) &\Leftrightarrow y_T \in L^2(0, \pi). \end{aligned}$$

- \* Can we do better ? We have seen in Section 2.1, that a better (in the sense of a smaller  $L^2$  norm) consists in choosing an exponential control  $v_n(t) = M_n e^{-n^2(T-t)}$ . In that case, we have the estimate

$$\|v_n\|_{L^2(0,T)} \sim_{+\infty} Cn |y_{n,T}|.$$

It can then be checked that the regularity of such a control is related to the regularity of  $y_T$  as follows.

$$\begin{aligned} v \in L^2(0, T, L^2(0, \pi)) &\Leftrightarrow y_T \in H_0^1(0, \pi), \\ v \in L^2(0, T, H^{-1}(0, \pi)) &\Leftrightarrow y_T \in L^2(0, \pi). \end{aligned}$$

As a conclusion, if one wants to control to a target which is in  $L^2(0, \pi)$ , we can either take a time-independent control in  $H^{-2}(0, \pi)$  or a time dependent control in  $L^2(0, T, H^{-1}(0, \pi))$ . In some sense we pay the higher regularity in space of  $v$  by a smaller regularity in time of  $v$ .

Another way to understand this analysis is that, if one wants to be able to control the equation with a control that only belongs to  $L^2((0, T) \times \Omega)$ , we need to impose  $y_T \in H_0^1(0, \pi)$ . A target  $y_T$  belonging to  $L^2(0, \pi) \setminus H_0^1(0, \pi)$  (such as a indicatrix function for instance) is not achievable by controls in  $L^2$ .

- **Null-controllability** : We ask now a different question : we assume that  $y_T = 0$  and that  $y_0$  is any function. Is it possible to achieve 0 at time  $T$  starting from any  $y_0$  ?

- \* If we choose  $v_n$  to be constant in time, the computations of Section 2.1 show that

$$v_n(t) = \frac{-n^2 e^{-n^2 T} y_{n,0}}{1 - e^{-n^2 T}} \sim_{+\infty} -n^2 e^{-n^2 t} y_{n,0}.$$

Formally, we have thus found a time independent control  $v$  that reads

$$v(x) = \sqrt{2/\pi} \sum_{n \geq 1} -\frac{n^2 e^{-n^2 T} y_{n,0}}{1 - e^{-n^2 T}} \sin(nx).$$

and we observe that this series converges for any  $y_0$  in a possibly very negative Sobolev space  $H^{-k}$ . This is a nice consequence of the regularizing effect of the heat equation (without source terms).

It follows immediately that the null-controllability of the heat equation is much more easy to achieve than the exact controllability to any given trajectory.

- \* Just like before we could then try to find the optimal control in the  $L^2$  sense. We will discuss this question in a more general setting later on.

In practice, we will be interested in control problems for the heat equation that are supported in a subset of the domain  $\Omega$  or on the boundary. This makes the problem much more difficult as we will see in the sequel since it is no more possible to use a basic Fourier decomposition that lead to the resolution of a countable family of controlled scalar, linear, and independent ODEs.



## Chapter II

# Controllability of linear ordinary differential equations

In this chapter, we focus our attention on the following controlled system

$$\begin{cases} y'(t) + Ay(t) = Bv(t), \\ y(0) = y_0, \end{cases} \quad (\text{II.1})$$

where  $A \in M_n(\mathbb{R})$ ,  $B \in M_{n,m}(\mathbb{R})$ ,  $y(t) \in \mathbb{R}^n$  and  $v(t) \in \mathbb{R}^m$ . Note that  $A$  and  $B$  do not depend on time (even though some part of the following analysis can be adapted for non autonomous systems).

We shall often denote by  $E = \mathbb{R}^n$  the state space and by  $U = \mathbb{R}^m$  the control space.

## 1 Preliminaries

### 1.1 Exact representation formula

Given an initial data  $y_0 \in \mathbb{R}^n$  and a control  $v$ , we recall that (II.1) can be explicitly solved by means of the fundamental solution of the homogeneous equation  $t \mapsto e^{-tA}z$ ,  $z \in \mathbb{R}^n$  and of the Duhamel formula. We obtain

$$y(t) = e^{-tA}y_0 + \int_0^t e^{-(t-s)A}Bv(s) ds, \quad \forall t \in [0, T].$$

In particular, the solution at time  $T$  (which is the object we are interested in) is given by

$$y(T) = e^{-TA}y_0 + \int_0^T e^{-(T-s)A}Bv(s) ds. \quad (\text{II.2})$$

We recall that the exponential of any matrix  $M$  is defined by the series

$$e^M = \sum_{k \geq 0} \frac{M^k}{k!},$$

which is locally uniformly convergent.

The linear part (in  $v$ ) of the solution will be denoted by

$$L_T v \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \int_0^T e^{-(T-s)A}Bv(s) ds,$$

it corresponds to the solution of our system with the initial data  $y_0 = 0$ .

In the non-autonomous case, we need to use the resolvent matrix as recalled in Section 1 of Appendix A.

## 1.2 Duality

As we will see later on it will be very useful to adopt a dual point of view in our analysis. For the moment, we simply pick any  $q_T \in \mathbb{R}^n$  and we take the Euclidean inner product of (II.2) by  $q_T$ . We get

$$\langle y(T), q_T \rangle_E = \langle e^{-TA} y_0, q_T \rangle_E + \int_0^T \langle e^{-(T-s)A} B v(s), q_T \rangle_E ds,$$

that we can rewrite, using the adjoint operators (=transpose matrix in this context), as follows

$$\langle y(T), q_T \rangle_E = \langle y_0, e^{-TA^*} q_T \rangle_E + \int_0^T \langle v(s), B^* e^{-(T-s)A^*} q_T \rangle_U ds. \quad (\text{II.3})$$

We can still reformulate at little bit this formula by introducing the adjoint equation of (II.1) which is the backward in time homogeneous system (i.e. without any control term)

$$-q'(t) + A^* q(t) = 0, \quad (\text{II.4})$$

with the *final* data  $q(T) = q_T$  and which can be explicitly computed

$$q(t) = e^{-(T-t)A^*} q_T.$$

We will see in Section 5 the reason why the adjoint equation enters the game.

With this notation, (II.3) becomes

$$\langle y(T), q(T) \rangle_E = \langle y_0, q(0) \rangle_E + \int_0^T \langle v(s), B^* q(s) \rangle_U ds, \quad (\text{II.5})$$

and this equation holds true for any solution  $q$  of the adjoint system (II.4)

## 1.3 Reachable states. Control spaces

The solution of our system (II.2) is well-defined as soon as  $v \in L^1(0, T, \mathbb{R}^m) = L^1(0, T, U)$ , see section 2 of Appendix A and that the corresponding solution map  $L_T : v \mapsto y$  is continuous from  $L^1(0, T, U)$  into  $C^0([0, T], E)$ .

For any subspace  $V \subset L^1(0, T, U)$  we define the set of reachable states **A** at time  $T$  as follows

$$R_{T,V}(y_0) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \left\{ e^{-TA} y_0 + \int_0^T e^{-(T-s)A} B v(s) ds, \text{ for } v \in V \right\} = e^{-TA} y_0 + L_T(V).$$

We immediately see that  $R_{T,V}(y_0)$  is a finite dimensional affine subspace of  $E = \mathbb{R}^n$ . Moreover, since  $L_T$  is continuous for the  $L^1(0, T, U)$  topology, we obtain that

$$R_{T,\bar{V}}(y_0) = \overline{R_{T,V}(y_0)},$$

and since this last space is finite dimensional, we finally have

$$R_{T,\bar{V}}(y_0) = R_{T,V}(y_0).$$

As a consequence, for any **dense** subspace  $V$  of  $L^1(0, T, U)$ , we have

$$R_{T,V}(y_0) = R_{T,L^1(0,T,U)}(y_0).$$

Therefore, in the sequel we can choose, without consequence, any dense subspace of  $L^1(0, T, U)$  to study the controllability properties of our system and the corresponding reachable set will simply be denoted by  $R_T(y_0)$ .

As a consequence of the previous analysis, we have that if  $y_T \in R_T(y_0)$  we can actually achieve this target with a control belonging to the space  $C_c^\infty(]0, T[)$ .



## 2 Kalman criterion. Unique continuation

The first criterion we have in order to decide whether or not (II.1) is controllable is the following famous result.

### Theorem II.2.1 (Kalman rank criterion)

Let  $T > 0$ . The following propositions are equivalent.

1. Problem (S) is exactly controllable at time  $T$  (for any  $y_0, y_T \dots$ )
2. Problem (S) is approximately controllable at time  $T$  (for any  $y_0, y_T \dots$ )
3. The matrices  $A$  and  $B$  satisfy

$$\text{rank}(K) = n, \text{ with } K \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (B|AB|\dots|A^{n-1}B) \in M_{n,mn}(\mathbb{R}). \quad (\text{II.6})$$

If any of the above properties hold we say that the pair  $(A, B)$  is controllable.

The matrix  $K$  in this result is called the Kalman matrix.

### Remark II.2.2

- This result shows, in particular, that in this framework the notions of approximate and exact controllability are equivalent.
- It also shows that those two notions are independent of the time horizon  $T$ .
- It is very useful to observe that the rank condition (II.6) is equivalent to the following property

$$\text{Ker } K^* = \{0\}.$$

### Proof :

In this proof, we assume that  $y_0$  is any fixed initial data.

1. $\Leftrightarrow$ 2. Since we work in a finite dimensional setting, it follows from (II.2) that

$$\begin{aligned} \text{exact controllability from } y_0 &\iff R_T(y_0) = E \\ &\iff R_T(y_0) \text{ is dense in } E \\ &\iff \text{approximate controllability from } y_0. \end{aligned}$$

1. $\Rightarrow$ 3. Assume that  $\text{rank}(K) < n$ , or equivalently that  $\text{Ker } K^* \neq \{0\}$ ; it follows that there exists  $q_T \in \mathbb{R}^n \setminus \{0\}$  such that  $K^* q_T = 0$ . But we have

$$\begin{aligned} K^* q_T = 0 &\iff B^*(A^*)^p q_T = 0, \forall p < n \\ &\iff B^*(A^*)^p q_T = 0, \forall p \geq 0, \text{ by the Cayley-Hamilton Theorem} \\ &\iff B^* e^{-sA^*} q_T = 0, \forall s \in [0, T], \text{ by the properties of the exponential.} \end{aligned}$$

By (II.3), we deduce that such a  $q_T$  is necessarily orthogonal to the vector space  $R_T(y_0) - e^{-TA} y_0$ , and therefore this subspace cannot be equal to  $\mathbb{R}^n$ .

3. $\Rightarrow$ 1. Assume that our system is not exactly controllable at time  $T$ . It implies that, there exists a  $q_T \neq 0$  which is orthogonal to  $R_T(y_0) - e^{-TA} y_0$ . By (II.3), we deduce that **for any control**  $v$  we have

$$\int_0^T \langle v(s), B^* e^{-(T-s)A^*} q_T \rangle_U ds = 0.$$

We apply this equality to the particular control  $v(s) = B^* e^{-(T-s)A^*} q_T$  to deduce that we necessarily have

$$B^* e^{-sA^*} q_T = 0, \quad \forall s \in [0, T].$$

The equivalences above show that  $q_T \in \text{Ker } K^*$  and thus this kernel cannot reduce to  $\{0\}$ .

### Remark II.2.3

At the very beginning of the proof we have shown that

$$q_T \in \text{Ker } K^* \iff q_T \in Q_T,$$

where  $Q_T$  is the set of the non-observable adjoint states defined by

$$Q_T \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{q_T \in \mathbb{R}^n, \quad B^* e^{-sA^*} q_T = 0, \quad \forall s \in [0, T]\}.$$

Thus, another formulation of the Kalman criterion is

$$(A, B) \text{ is controllable} \iff \left( B^* e^{-sA^*} q_T = 0, \quad \forall s \in [0, T] \Rightarrow q_T = 0 \right).$$

This last property is called the unique continuation property of the adjoint system through the observation operator  $B^*$ .

The point we want to emphasize here is that, in the infinite dimension case, it can be difficult to define a Kalman matrix (or operator) if  $A$  is an unbounded linear operator (because we need to compute successive powers of  $A$ ) but however, it seems to be affordable to define the set  $Q_T$  as soon as we have a suitable semi-group theory that gives a sense to  $e^{-sA^*}$  for  $s \geq 0$  since it is not possible in general to simply set  $e^{-sA^*} = \sum_{k \geq 0} \frac{1}{k!} (-sA^*)^k$  when  $A^*$  is a differential operator.

More precisely, if we imagine for a moment that  $A$  is an unbounded linear operator in an Hilbert space (for instance the Laplace-Dirichlet operator in some Sobolev space), then it is very difficult to define a kind of Kalman operator since it would require to consider successive powers of  $A$ , each of them being defined on different domains (that are getting smaller and smaller at each application of  $A$ ).

### Example II.2.4

Without loss of generality we can assume that  $B$  is full rank  $\text{rank}(B) = m$ .

1. If the pair  $(A, B)$  is controllable, then the eigenspaces of  $A^*$  (and thus also those of  $A$ ) has at most dimension  $m$ . For instance if  $m = 1$ , a necessary condition for the controllability of the pair  $(A, B)$  is that each eigenvalue of  $A^*$  is geometrically simple.

Another necessary condition is that the minimal polynomial of  $A^*$  is of degree exactly  $n$ .

2. *Second order systems.* With the same notations as before, the second order controlled system

$$y'' + Ay = Bv,$$

is controllable if and only if the pair  $(A, B)$  satisfies the Kalman criterion.

3. *Conditions on the control:* If the pair  $(A, B)$  is controllable then we can find controls satisfying additional properties.

- For any  $v_0 \in \mathbb{R}^m$  and  $v_T \in \mathbb{R}^m$  we can find a control  $v$  from  $y_0$  to  $y_T$  for our system such that

$$y(0) = y_0, \quad y(T) = y_T, \quad v(0) = v_0, \quad \text{and} \quad v(T) = v_T.$$

- We can find a control  $v \in C_c^\infty(0, T)$  such that  $y(0) = y_0$  and  $y(T) = y_T$ .

In view of the techniques we will present later on on the controllability of parabolic PDEs, we shall now present another proof of the previous theorem.

**Proof (of Theorem II.2.1 - direct proof):**

We shall actually prove that, if the Kalman condition is satisfied then our system is indeed controllable. Moreover, we shall give a **constructive** proof of the control.

For simplicity (and since we are mainly interested in presenting the method and not in the general result that we have already proved before), we shall assume that  $m = 1$ . We also assume that  $y_T = 0$  (which is always possible for a linear system).

By assumption the square (since  $m = 1$ ) matrix  $K$  is invertible and thus we shall use the change of variable  $y = Kz$  in order to transform our control system. A simple computation shows that

$$B = K \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{=\bar{B}}, \quad \text{and} \quad AK = K \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & \cdots & \cdots & 0 & a_{1,n} \\ 1 & 0 & \cdots & \vdots & a_{2,n} \\ 0 & & \ddots & \vdots & a_{3,n} \\ \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & 0 & \vdots \\ 0 & \cdots & 0 & 1 & a_{n,n} \end{pmatrix}}_{=\bar{A}}.$$

It follows that the equation for  $z$

$$Kz' + AKz = Bv,$$

becomes

$$K(z' + \bar{A}z) = K\bar{B}v,$$

and since  $K$  is invertible

$$z' + \bar{A}z = \bar{B}v \tag{II.7}$$

With the Kalman matrix, we thus have been able to put our system into a canonical form where  $\bar{A}$  has a companion structure (it looks pretty much like a Jordan block) and  $\bar{B}$  is the first vector of the canonical basis of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ .

This structure is often called **cascade systems** in control theory. The important feature of  $\bar{A}$  is that its under diagonal terms do not vanish. It reveals the particular way by which the control  $v$  acts on the system. Indeed,  $v$  directly appears in the first equation and then tries to drive  $z_1$  to the target at time  $T$  (observe however that the dynamics is also coupled with the rest of the system by the term  $a_{1,n}z_n$ )

$$z_1'(t) + a_{1,n}z_n(t) = v(t).$$

The control  $v$  does not appear in the second equation

$$z_2'(t) + z_1(t) + a_{2,n}z_n(t) = 0,$$

but this equation contains a term  $z_1$  that plays the role of an indirect control of  $z_2$ , and so on ...

Let us now give the construction of the control  $v$ :

- We start by defining  $(\bar{z}_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$  to be the free solution of the system (the one with  $v = 0$ ).
- We choose a truncature function  $\eta : [0, T] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  such that  $\eta = 1$  on  $[0, T/3]$  and  $\eta = 0$  on  $[2T/3, T]$ .
- We start by choosing

$$z_n(t) := \eta(t)\bar{z}_n(t),$$

then, by using the last equation of the system (II.7), we need to define

$$z_{n-1}(t) := z'_n(t) - a_{n-1,n}z_n(t).$$

Similarly, by using the equation number  $n - 1$  of (II.7), we set

$$z_{n-2}(t) := z'_{n-1}(t) - a_{n-2,n}z_n(t).$$

by induction, we define  $z_{n-3}, \dots, z_2$  in the same way.

Finally, the first equation of the system (II.7) gives us the control we need

$$v(t) = z'_1(t) + a_{1,n}z_n(t).$$

By such a construction, the functions  $(z_i)_i$  satisfy the controlled system with the control  $v$  we just defined.

- Let us prove, by reverse induction that, for any  $k$  we have

$$\begin{cases} z_k = \bar{z}_k, & \text{in } [0, T/3], \\ z_k = 0, & \text{in } [2T/3, T]. \end{cases} \quad (\text{II.8})$$

This will in particular prove that  $z(T) = 0$  and that  $z(0) = \bar{z}(0) = \bar{z}(0) = z_0$ .

- For  $k = n$ , the properties (II.8) simply comes from the choice of the truncature function.
- For  $k = n - 1$ , we observe that, by construction and induction, for any  $t \in [0, T/3]$ ,

$$z_{n-1}(t) = z'_n(t) - a_{n-1,n}z_n(t) = \bar{z}'_n(t) - a_{n-1,n}\bar{z}_n(t) = \bar{z}_{n-1}(t),$$

the last equality coming from the fact that  $\bar{z}$  solves the free equation.

■

### Exercise II.2.5

Propose a similar proof to deal with the case  $m = 2$  and  $\text{rank}(B) = m = 2$ .

### Exercise II.2.6

Assume that  $A, B$  are such that the rank  $r$  of the Kalman matrix  $K$  satisfies  $r < n$ . Then there exists a  $P \in GL_n(\mathbb{R})$  such that

$$A = P \begin{pmatrix} A_{11} & A_{12} \\ 0 & A_{22} \end{pmatrix} P^{-1}, \text{ and } B = P \begin{pmatrix} B_1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix},$$

and moreover the pair  $(A_{11}, B_1)$  is controllable.

What are the consequences of this result for the controllability of the initial system ?

**Exercise II.2.7 (Partial controllability)**

We assume given  $p \leq n$  and a matrix  $P \in M_{p,n}(\mathbb{R})$ . We say that (II.1) is partially controllable relatively to  $P$  if and only if for any  $y_0 \in \mathbb{R}^n$  and any  $\bar{y}_T \in \mathbb{R}^p$  there exists a control  $v \in L^2(0, T; U)$  such that the associated solution to (II.1) satisfies

$$Py(T) = \bar{y}_T.$$

Show that (II.1) is partially controllable relatively to  $P$  if and only if

$$\text{rank}(K_P) = p,$$

where

$$K_P \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (PB|PAB|\dots|PA^{n-1}B) \in M_{p,mn}(\mathbb{R}).$$

**3 Fattorini-Hautus test**

We are going to establish another criterion for the controllability of autonomous linear ODE systems. This one will only be concerned by the eigenspaces of the matrix  $A^*$ , and we know that there are plenty of unbounded operators for which we can define a suitable spectral theory. It is then easy to imagine that we will be able, at least, to formulate a similar result in the infinite dimension case.

**Theorem II.3.8 (Fattorini-Hautus test)**

The pair  $(A, B)$  is controllable if and only if we have

$$\text{Ker}(B^*) \cap \text{Ker}(A^* - \lambda I) = \{0\}, \quad \forall \lambda \in \mathbb{C}. \quad (\text{II.9})$$

In other words :  $(A, B)$  is controllable if and only if

$$B^* \phi \neq 0, \quad \text{for any eigenvector } \phi \text{ of } A^*.$$

Let us start with the following straightforward lemma (in which the space  $Q_T$  is considered as a subspace of  $\mathbb{C}^n$ ).

**Lemma II.3.9**

For any polynomial  $P \in \mathbb{C}[X]$  we have

$$P(A^*)Q_T \subset Q_T.$$

**Proof :**

Let  $q_T \in Q_T$ . By definition, we have

$$B^* e^{sA^*} q_T = 0, \quad \forall s \in \mathbb{R},$$

so that by differentiating  $k$  times with respect to  $s$ , we get

$$B^* e^{sA^*} (A^*)^k q_T = 0, \quad \forall s \in \mathbb{R}.$$

It means that  $(A^*)^k q_T \in Q_T$ . The proof is complete. ■

**Proof (of Theorem II.3.8):**

The Kalman criterion says that  $(A, B)$  is controllable if and only if we have  $\text{Ker } K^* = \{0\}$ . Moreover, we saw at the end of Section 2 that this condition is equivalent to saying that there is no non-observable adjoint states excepted 0, that is

$$Q_T = \{0\}.$$

- Assume first that (II.9) is not true. There exists a  $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$  and a  $\phi \neq 0$  such that

$$A^* \phi = \lambda \phi, \text{ and } B^* \phi = 0.$$

Note that, in particular,  $\lambda$  is an eigenvalue of  $A^*$ . A straightforward computation shows that

$$B^* e^{-sA^*} \phi = B^* \left( e^{-s\lambda} \phi \right) = e^{-s\lambda} B^* \phi = 0.$$

This proves that  $\phi \in Q_T$  so that  $Q_T \neq \{0\}$ . Therefore the system does not fulfill the Kalman criterion. We have proved the non controllability of the system.

- Assume that (II.9) holds and let  $\phi \in Q_T$ . We shall prove that  $\phi = 0$ . To begin with we take  $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$  an eigenvalue of  $A^*$  and we introduce  $E_\lambda$  the generalized eigenspace associated with  $\lambda$ , that is

$$E_\lambda = \text{Ker}_{\mathbb{C}^n} (A^* - \lambda I)^n.$$

Linear algebra says that we can write the direct sum

$$\mathbb{C}^n = E_{\lambda_1} \oplus \cdots \oplus E_{\lambda_p},$$

with distinct values of  $(\lambda_i)_i$ .

We recall that the projector on  $E_\lambda$  associated with such a direct sum can be expressed as a polynomial in  $A^*$  : there exists polynomials  $P_\lambda \in \mathbb{C}[X]$  such that

$$\phi = \sum_{i=1}^p P_{\lambda_i}(A^*) \phi, \text{ with } P_{\lambda_i}(A^*) \phi \in E_{\lambda_i}, \quad \forall i \in \{1, \dots, p\}. \quad (\text{II.10})$$

By Lemma II.3.9, we have  $\phi_\lambda := P_\lambda(A^*) \phi \in Q_T$ . We want to show that  $\phi_\lambda = 0$ . If it is not the case, there exists  $k \geq 1$  such that

$$(A^* - \lambda I)^k \phi_\lambda = 0, \text{ and } (A^* - \lambda I)^{k-1} \phi_\lambda \neq 0.$$

This proves that  $(A^* - \lambda I)^{k-1} \phi_\lambda$  is an eigenvector of  $A^*$  and, by Lemma II.3.9 it belongs to  $Q_T$ . Since by definition we have  $Q_T \subset \text{Ker } B^*$ , we have proved that

$$(A^* - \lambda I)^{k-1} \phi_\lambda \in \text{Ker } (B^*) \cap \text{Ker } (A^* - \lambda I),$$

which is a contradiction with (II.9).

Therefore,  $\phi_\lambda = 0$  for any eigenvalue  $\lambda$  and, by (II.10), we eventually get  $\phi = 0$ . ■

### Remark II.3.10

*The above proof of the Hautus-Fattorini test is not necessarily the shortest one in the finite dimension case but it has the advantage to be generalizable to the infinite dimensional setting, see Theorem III.3.7.*

### Exercise II.3.11 (Simultaneous control)

*Let us assume that  $m = 1$  and we are given two pairs  $(A_1, B_1)$  (dimension  $n_1$ ) and  $(A_2, B_2)$  (of dimension  $n_2$ ). We assume that both pairs are controllable and we ask the question of whether they are simultaneously controllable (that is we can drive the two systems from one point to another by using the same control for both systems).*

*Show that the two systems are simultaneously controllable if and only if  $\text{Sp}(A_1) \cap \text{Sp}(A_2) = \emptyset$ .*

## 4 The moments method

We shall now describe, still in the simplest case of an autonomous linear controlled system of ODEs, one of the methods that can be used to construct a control and that will appear to be powerful in the analysis of the control of evolution PDEs in the next chapters.

This method relies on the explicit knowledge of the form of the resolvent operators  $e^{-sA^*}$ .

We present the method in the case  $m = 1$  ( $B$  is thus a single column vector) even though it can be adapted to more general settings.

Let us denote by  $\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_p$  the distinct (complex) eigenvalues of  $A^*$  and we set  $n_k$  to be the algebraic multiplicity of  $\lambda_k$ . Since  $m = 1$ , we know by the Hautus test (or by Example II.2.4) that each eigenspace is one dimensional. We choose  $\Phi_k^1, 1 \leq k \leq p$  to be such an eigenvector. We build the families of generalized eigenvectors  $\Phi_k^2, \dots, \Phi_k^{n_k}$  defined by

$$A^* \Phi_k^l = \lambda_k \Phi_k^l + \Phi_k^{l-1}, \quad l \in \{1, \dots, n_k\},$$

with the convention that  $\Phi_k^l = 0, \forall l \leq 0$  (in such a way that the previous formula also holds for non positive values of  $l \leq n_k$ ).

With those notations, we can compute successive powers of  $sA^*$

$$(sA^*)^i \Phi_k^l = \sum_{j=0}^i C_i^j s^j (s\lambda_k)^{i-j} \Phi_k^{l-j}, \quad \forall l \leq n_k,$$

and the binomial coefficient is defined by

$$C_i^j = \frac{i!}{j!(i-j)!}.$$

We find that

$$\begin{aligned} e^{sA^*} \Phi_k^l &= \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{i!} (sA^*)^i \Phi_k^l \\ &= \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} \sum_{j=0}^i \frac{C_i^j}{i!} s^j (s\lambda_k)^{i-j} \Phi_k^{l-j} \\ &= \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} \sum_{j=0}^i \frac{1}{(i-j)! j!} s^j (s\lambda_k)^{i-j} \Phi_k^{l-j} \\ &= \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \frac{s^j}{j!} \sum_{i=j}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(i-j)!} (s\lambda_k)^{i-j} \Phi_k^{l-j} \\ &= e^{s\lambda_k} \left( \sum_{j=0}^{l-1} \frac{s^j}{j!} \Phi_k^{l-j} \right). \end{aligned}$$

In order to simplify the notation, we introduce the following functions (that depend on  $T$ )

$$\eta_{k,j}(s) := e^{-(T-s)\lambda_k} \frac{(s-T)^j}{j!}, \quad \forall k \in \{1, \dots, p\}, \forall j \geq 0,$$

in such a way that we have, for any  $1 \leq k \leq p$  and  $1 \leq l \leq n_k$

$$e^{-(T-s)A^*} \Phi_k^l = \sum_{j=0}^{l-1} \eta_{k,j}(s) \Phi_k^{l-j}.$$

Using (II.3), we see that a function  $v$  is a control (with target  $y_T = 0$ ) if and only if we have

$$\int_0^T \langle v(s), B^* e^{-(T-s)A^*} q_T \rangle_U ds = -\langle y_0, e^{-TA^*} q_T \rangle_E = -\langle e^{-TA} y_0, q_T \rangle_E, \quad \forall q_T \in E = \mathbb{R}^n.$$

By linearity, it is enough to test this equality on a basis of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . In particular, we can use the basis  $(\Phi_k^l)_{\substack{1 \leq k \leq p \\ 1 \leq l \leq n_k}}$  and obtain that  $v$  is a control if and only if we have

$$\sum_{j=0}^{l-1} \int_0^T \eta_{k,j}(s) \langle v(s), B^* \Phi_k^{l-j} \rangle_U ds = -\langle e^{-TA} y_0, \Phi_k^l \rangle, \quad \forall 1 \leq k \leq p, \forall 1 \leq l \leq n_k.$$

This formula is general, but since we have assumed that  $m = 1$ , the space  $U$  is nothing but  $\mathbb{R}$  and we can recast the problem as follows

$$\sum_{j=0}^{l-1} (B^* \Phi_k^{l-j}) \int_0^T \eta_{k,j}(s) v(s) ds = -\langle e^{-TA} y_0, \Phi_k^l \rangle, \quad \forall 1 \leq k \leq p, \forall 1 \leq l \leq n_k. \quad (\text{II.11})$$

This is a *moment problem* : we look for a scalar function  $s \in (0, T) \mapsto v(s)$  such that its integral against some given functions are prescribed.

We use now the fact that the maps  $\eta_{k,j}$  are linearly independent; in particular we can find a so-called *biorthogonal family* defined as a family  $(q_{k,j})_{\substack{1 \leq l \leq k \leq p \\ 0 \leq j \leq n-1}}$  satisfying

$$\int_0^T \eta_{k,j}(s) q_{k',j'}(s) ds = \delta_{k,k'} \delta_{j,j'}, \quad \forall k, k', j, j'.$$

Such a family can be obtained, for instance, by simply inverting the Gram matrix of the initial family (this will give the coordinates of the  $q_{k,j}$  in the basis made by the  $\eta_{k,j}$ ).

We can now try to find a possible control  $v$  in this basis. More precisely, we look for  $v$  of the following form

$$v(s) = \sum_{k=1}^p \sum_{j=0}^{n_k-1} q_{k,j}(s) v_{k,j},$$

where  $v_{k,j} \in U = \mathbb{R}^m = \mathbb{R}$  are scalars (since  $m = 1$ ) to be determined. Using this form for  $v$  in the above set of equations lead to the following relations

$$\sum_{j=0}^{l-1} (B^* \Phi_k^{l-j}) v_{k,j} = -\langle e^{-TA} y_0, \Phi_k^l \rangle_E, \quad \forall 1 \leq k \leq p, \forall 1 \leq l \leq n_k.$$

For each given value of  $k$ , we have a set of  $n_k$  equations to solve. This system has actually a triangular form that will help the resolution

- Let us first look at the equation for  $l = 1$ :

$$(B^* \Phi_k^1) v_{k,0} = -\langle e^{-TA} y_0, \Phi_k^1 \rangle_E.$$

Since  $\Phi_k^1$  is an eigenvector of  $A^*$ , we know that  $B^* \Phi_k^1$  cannot vanish (if it was the case, it would imply that  $\Phi_k^1$  belongs to the kernel of  $K^*$  which is impossible). This proves that the above equation is solvable, for instance by setting

$$v_{k,0} = \frac{1}{B^* \Phi_k^1} \left( -\langle e^{-TA} y_0, \Phi_k^1 \rangle_E \right).$$

- Let us now look at the equation for  $l = 2$  (assuming of course that  $n_k \geq 2$ ):

$$(B^* \Phi_k^1) v_{k,1} + (B^* \Phi_k^2) v_{k,0} = -\langle e^{-TA} y_0, \Phi_k^2 \rangle_E,$$

but since  $v_{k,0}$  has already been determined we can use again that  $B^* \Phi_k^1 \neq 0$  to deduce that

$$v_{k,1} = \frac{1}{B^* \Phi_k^1} \left( -\langle e^{-TA} y_0, \Phi_k^2 \rangle_E - (B^* \Phi_k^2) v_{k,0} \right).$$



- We can continue the process to compute a suitable  $v_{k,j}$  for any  $0 \leq j \leq n_k - 1$ .

At the end of this game, we have explicitly built a control  $v$  that drives the solution to zero at time  $T$ .

#### Remark II.4.12

- *This proof actually also prove the Hautus test criterion (indeed we managed to build a control by simply using the fact that  $B^* \phi \neq 0$  for any  $\phi$  which is an eigenvector of  $A^*$ ).*
- *Notice that, in this method, we can choose any biorthogonal family  $(q_{k,j})_{k,j}$  of the  $(\eta_{k,j})_{k,j}$ . In particular, choosing the one which is proposed in this proof is not necessarily the best choice if one imagine that the space dimension will eventually increase if we are in a process of controlling an infinite dimensional problem.*

#### Remark II.4.13 (Optimal $L^2(0, T)$ control)

The construction above strongly depends on the choice of the biorthogonal family  $(q_{k,j})_{k,j}$  since there are infinitely many such families. However, if we choose this family to satisfy

$$q_{k,j} \in \text{Span}(\eta_{l,i}, \quad l \in \{1, \dots, p\}, i \in \{1, \dots, n_l\}), \quad (\text{II.12})$$

which is possible by the Gram-Schmidt orthonormalisation process, then we can prove that the associated control, that we call  $v_0$ , is the one of minimal  $L^2(0, T)$ -norm.

Indeed, assume that  $v \in L^2(0, T)$  is any other admissible control for our problem. Since  $v$  and  $v_0$  both satisfy the same system of linear equations (II.11), we first deduce that

$$\sum_{j=0}^{l-1} (B^* \Phi_k^{l-j}) \int_0^T \eta_{k,j}(s)(v(s) - v_0(s)) ds = 0, \quad \forall 1 \leq k \leq p, \forall 1 \leq l \leq n_k,$$

and, using as before that  $B^* \Phi_k^1 \neq 0$ , we can conclude that

$$\int_0^T \eta_{k,j}(s)(v(s) - v_0(s)) ds = 0, \quad \forall 1 \leq k \leq p, \forall 1 \leq j \leq n_k.$$

Using now the fact that  $v_0$  is a combination of the  $(q_{k,j})$  and thus a combination of the  $\eta_{k,j}$  by the assumption (II.12), we conclude that

$$\int_0^T v_0(s)(v(s) - v_0(s)) ds = 0.$$

This naturally implies that

$$\|v\|_{L^2}^2 = \|v_0\|_{L^2}^2 + \|v - v_0\|_{L^2}^2,$$

which actually proves that  $v_0$  is the **unique** admissible control with minimal  $L^2$  norm.

## 5 Linear-Quadratic optimal control problems

In this section, we will discuss a class of problems which is slightly different from the controllability issues that we discussed previously. However, some of those results will be useful later on and are interesting by themselves (in particular in applications).

### 5.1 Framework

Since it does not change anything to the forthcoming analysis we do not assume in this section that the linear ODE we are studying is autonomous. More precisely, we suppose given continuous maps  $t \mapsto A(t) \in M_n(\mathbb{R})$  and

$t \mapsto B(t) \in M_{n,m}(\mathbb{R})$  and an initial data  $y_0$  and we consider the following controlled ODE

$$\begin{cases} y'(t) + A(t)y(t) = B(t)v(t), \\ y(0) = y_0. \end{cases} \quad (\text{II.13})$$

Following Sections 1 and 2 of the Appendix A, this problem is well-posed for  $v \in L^1(0, T, \mathbb{R}^m)$ , in which case the solution satisfies  $y \in C^0([0, T], \mathbb{R}^n)$  and the solution map  $v \in L^1 \mapsto y \in C^0$  is continuous.

Let now  $t \mapsto M_y(t) \in S_n^+(\mathbb{R})$ ,  $t \mapsto M_v(t) \in S_m^+(\mathbb{R})$  be two continuous maps with values in the set of symmetric semi-definite positive matrices  $S_n^+(\mathbb{R})$  and  $M_T \in S_n^+$  be a symmetric semi-definite positive matrix. We assume that  $M_v$  is uniformly definite positive :

$$\exists \alpha > 0, \quad \langle M_v(t)\xi, \xi \rangle_U \geq \alpha \|\xi\|^2, \quad \forall \xi \in \mathbb{R}^m, \forall t \in [0, T]. \quad (\text{II.14})$$

For any given control function  $v \in L^2(0, T, \mathbb{R}^m)$ , we can now define the cost functional

$$F(v) := \frac{1}{2} \int_0^T \langle M_y(t)y(t), y(t) \rangle_E dt + \frac{1}{2} \int_0^T \langle M_v(t)v(t), v(t) \rangle_U dt + \frac{1}{2} \langle M_T y(T), y(T) \rangle_E,$$

where, in this formula,  $y$  is the unique solution to (II.13) associated with the given control  $v$ . Since  $y$  depends linearly on the couple  $(y_0, v)$ , we see that the functional  $F$  is quadratic and convex. Moreover, it is strictly convex thanks to the assumption (II.14).

## 5.2 Main result. Adjoint state

### Theorem II.5.14

*Under the assumptions above, there exists a unique minimiser  $\bar{v} \in L^2(0, T, \mathbb{R}^m)$ , of the functional  $F$  on the set  $L^2(0, T, \mathbb{R}^m)$ .*

*Moreover,  $\bar{v}$  is the unique function in  $L^2(0, T, \mathbb{R}^m)$  such that there exists  $q \in C^1([0, T], \mathbb{R}^n)$  satisfying the set of equations*

$$\begin{cases} y'(t) + A(t)y(t) = B(t)\bar{v}(t), \\ y(0) = y_0, \\ -q'(t) + A^*(t)q(t) + M_y(t)y(t) = 0, \\ q(T) = -M_T y(T), \\ \bar{v}(t) = M_v(t)^{-1} B^*(t)q(t). \end{cases} \quad (\text{II.15})$$

*Moreover, the optimal energy is given by*

$$\inf_{L^2(0, T, \mathbb{R}^m)} F = F(\bar{v}) = -\frac{1}{2} \langle q(0), y_0 \rangle_E.$$

Such a function  $q$  is called **adjoint state** associated with our optimization problem.

Observe that there is no assumption on  $A$  and  $B$  for such an optimization problem to have a solution.

### Remark II.5.15

*One of the consequence of the previous theorem is that the optimal control  $\bar{v}$  is at least continuous in time and, if all the matrix-valued functions in the problem are  $C^k$  then the solution  $\bar{v}$  is itself  $C^k$ .*

Before proving the theorem we can make the following computation.

**Proposition II.5.16**

Assume that  $(y, q, v)$  is a solution to system (II.15), then we define  $\phi(t) = \langle y(t), q(t) \rangle$  and we have

$$\phi'(t) = \langle M_y(t)y(t), y(t) \rangle_E + \langle M_v(t)v(t), v(t) \rangle_U.$$

In particular, the solution of (II.15) (if it exists) is unique.

**Proof :**

We just compute the derivative of  $\phi$  to get

$$\begin{aligned} \phi'(t) &= \langle q'(t), y(t) \rangle_E + \langle q(t), y'(t) \rangle_E \\ &= \langle A^*(t)q(t) + M_y(t)y(t), y(t) \rangle_E - \langle q(t), A(t)y(t) - B(t)v(t) \rangle_E \\ &= \langle M_y(t)y(t), y(t) \rangle_E + \langle B^*(t)q(t), v(t) \rangle_U \\ &= \langle M_y(t)y(t), y(t) \rangle_E + \langle M_v(t)v(t), v(t) \rangle_U. \end{aligned}$$

In particular,  $\phi$  is non-decreasing. If  $y_0 = 0$ , then  $\phi(0) = 0$  and thus  $\phi(T) \geq 0$  and by construction we have

$$\phi(T) = -\langle M_T y(T), y(T) \rangle_E \geq 0.$$

By assumption on  $M_T$ , we deduce that  $M_T y(T) = 0$  (notice that  $M_T$  is not assumed to be definite positive) and using the equation relating  $q(T)$  to  $y(T)$ , we deduce that  $q(T) = 0$  and that  $\phi(T) = 0$ .

It follows, by integration over the time interval  $(0, T)$ , that

$$\int_0^T \langle M_y y, y \rangle_E + \langle M_v v, v \rangle_U dt = \int_0^T \phi'(t) dt = \phi(T) - \phi(0) = 0.$$

By assumption on  $M_v$ , we deduce that  $v = 0$ . The equation for  $y$  leads to  $y = 0$  and finally the equation on  $q$  gives  $q = 0$ . ■

Let us now prove the main result.

**Proof (of Theorem II.5.14):**

Uniqueness of the minimizer comes from the strict convexity of  $F$ . Moreover,  $F$  is non-negative and therefore has a finite infimum. In order to prove existence of the minimizer, we consider a minimizing sequence  $(v_n)_n \subset L^2(0, T, \mathbb{R}^m)$  :

$$F(v_n) \xrightarrow{n \rightarrow \infty} \inf F.$$

We want to prove that  $(v_n)_n$  is convergent. We may proceed by weak convergence arguments (that are more general) but in the present case we can simply use the fact that  $F$  is quadratic and that the dependence of  $y$  with respect to  $v$  is affine. In particular, we have

$$\begin{aligned} 8F\left(\frac{v_1 + v_2}{2}\right) &= \int_0^T \langle M_y(y_1 + y_2)(t), (y_1 + y_2)(t) \rangle_E dt \\ &\quad + \int_0^T \langle M_v(v_1 + v_2)(t), (v_1 + v_2)(t) \rangle_U dt + \langle M_T(y_1 + y_2)(T), (y_1 + y_2)(T) \rangle_E, \end{aligned}$$

and by the parallelogram formula we have

$$\begin{aligned} 8F\left(\frac{v_1 + v_2}{2}\right) &= 4F(v_1) + 4F(v_2) \\ &\quad - 8\left(\int_0^T \langle M_y(y_1 - y_2)(t), (y_1 - y_2)(t) \rangle_E dt + \int_0^T \langle M_v(v_1 - v_2)(t), (v_1 - v_2)(t) \rangle_U dt \right. \\ &\quad \left. + \langle M_T(y_1 - y_2)(T), (y_1 - y_2)(T) \rangle_E\right). \end{aligned}$$

By (II.14), we deduce that

$$2F\left(\frac{v_1 + v_2}{2}\right) \leq F(v_1) + F(v_2) - \alpha \|v_1 - v_2\|_{L^2}^2.$$

Applying this inequality to two elements of the minimizing sequence  $v_n$  and  $v_{n+p}$ , we get

$$2 \inf F \leq 2F\left(\frac{v_n + v_{n+p}}{2}\right) \leq F(v_n) + F(v_{n+p}) - \alpha \|v_n - v_{n+p}\|_{L^2}^2,$$

from which we deduce that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left( \sup_{p \geq 0} \|v_n - v_{n+p}\|_{L^2} \right) = 0.$$

This proves that  $(v_n)_n$  is a Cauchy sequence in  $L^2(0, T, \mathbb{R}^m)$ . Since this space is complete, we deduce that  $(v_n)_n$  converges towards some limit  $\bar{v}$  in this space. Let  $y_n$  be the solution of (II.13) associated with  $v_n$  and  $\bar{y}$  the solution associated with  $\bar{v}$ . The continuity of the solution operator  $v \mapsto y$  (see Appendix 2) gives that  $y_n$  converges towards  $\bar{y}$  in  $\mathcal{C}^0([0, T], \mathbb{R}^n)$ .

It is thus a simple exercise to pass to the limit in the definition of  $F(v_n)$  and to prove that it actually converges towards  $F(\bar{v})$ . The proof of the first part is complete.

Let us compute the differential of  $F$  at the equilibrium  $\bar{v}$  in the direction  $h \in L^2(0, T, \mathbb{R}^m)$ . We have

$$dF(\bar{v}).h = \int_0^T \langle M_y(t)y(t), \delta(t) \rangle_E dt + \int_0^T \langle M_v(t)\bar{v}(t), h(t) \rangle_U dt + \langle M_T y(T), \delta(T) \rangle_E,$$

where  $\delta$  is the solution of the problem

$$\begin{cases} \delta'(t) + A(t)\delta(t) = B(t)h(t), \\ \delta(0) = 0. \end{cases}$$

Let  $q$  be the unique solution to the adjoint problem

$$\begin{cases} -q'(t) + A^*(t)q(t) + M_y y(t) = 0, \\ q(T) = -M_T y(T), \end{cases}$$

We deduce that

$$\begin{aligned} \int_0^T \langle M_y(t)y(t), \delta(t) \rangle_E dt &= - \int_0^T \langle -q'(t) + A^*(t)q(t), \delta(t) \rangle_E dt \\ &= - \int_0^T \langle q(t), \delta'(t) + A(t)\delta(t) \rangle_E dt + \langle q(T), \delta(T) \rangle_E - \langle q(0), \delta(0) \rangle_E \\ &= - \int_0^T \langle q(t), B(t)h(t) \rangle_E dt - \langle M_T y(T), \delta(T) \rangle_E \\ &= - \int_0^T \langle B^*(t)q(t), h(t) \rangle_U dt - \langle M_T y(T), \delta(T) \rangle_E. \end{aligned}$$

It follows that

$$dF(\bar{v}).h = \int_0^T \langle M_v(t)\bar{v}(t) - B^*(t)q(t), h(t) \rangle_U dt.$$

The Euler-Lagrange equation for the minimization problem for  $F$  gives  $dF(\bar{v}) = 0$  so that we finally find that

$$M_v(t)\bar{v}(t) = B^*(t)q(t), \quad \forall t \in [0, T].$$

This is the expected condition between the optimal control  $\bar{v}$  and the adjoint state  $q$ . The first part of the proof is complete.

We introduce the function  $\phi(t) = \langle q(t), y(t) \rangle_E$ , we have  $\phi(T) = -\langle M_T y(T), y(T) \rangle_E$ , and by Proposition II.5.16 we conclude that

$$\inf_{L^2(0, T, \mathbb{R}^m)} F = F(\bar{v}) = -\frac{1}{2}\phi(T) + \frac{1}{2} \int_0^T \phi'(t) dt = -\frac{1}{2}\phi(0) = -\frac{1}{2}\langle y_0, q(0) \rangle_E.$$

■

### 5.3 Justification of the gradient computation

It remains to explain how we obtain in general the equations for the adjoint state. The formal computation (that may be fully justified in many cases) makes use of the notion of Lagrangian.

Let us set  $J(v, y)$  to be the same definition as  $F$  but with independent unknowns  $v$  and  $y$ . Minimizing  $F$  amounts at minimizing  $J$  with the additional constraints that  $y(0) = y_0$  and  $y'(t) + A(t)y(t) = B(t)v(t)$ .

To take into account those constraints, we introduce two dual variables  $q : [0, T] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$  and  $q_0 \in \mathbb{R}^n$ . The Lagrangian functional is thus defined by

$$L(v, y, q, q_0) = J(v, y) + \int_0^T \langle q(t), y'(t) + A(t)y(t) - B(t)v(t) \rangle_E dt + \langle q_0, y(0) - y_0 \rangle_E.$$

A simple integration by parts leads to

$$\begin{aligned} L(v, y, q, q_0) = J(v, y) + \int_0^T \langle -q'(t) + A^*(t)q(t), y(t) \rangle_E dt - \int_0^T \langle B^*(t)q(t), v(t) \rangle_U dt \\ + \langle q(T), y(T) \rangle_E - \langle q(0), y(0) \rangle_E + \langle q_0, y(0) - y_0 \rangle_E. \end{aligned}$$

And finally, the initial functional  $F$  satisfies

$$F(v) = L(v, y[v], q[v], q_0[v]),$$

for any choice of  $q[v]$  and  $q_0[v]$  since  $y[v]$  satisfies both constraints. It follows that the differential of  $F$  satisfies

$$\begin{aligned} dF(v).h &= \partial_v L.h + \partial_y L.(dy[v].h) + \partial_q L.(dq[v].h) + \partial_{q_0} L.(dq_0[v].h), \\ &= \partial_v L.h + \partial_y L.(dy[v].h), \end{aligned}$$

since  $\partial_q L$  and  $\partial_{q_0} L$  are precisely the two constraints satisfied by  $y[v]$ . The idea is now to choose  $q[v]$  and  $q_0[v]$  so as to eliminate the term in  $\partial_y L$ .

For any  $\delta : [0, T] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ , we have

$$\partial_y L.\delta = \int_0^T \langle M_y y(t) - q'(t) + A^*(t)q(t), \delta(t) \rangle_E dt + \langle M_T y(T), \delta(T) \rangle_E + \langle q(T), \delta(T) \rangle_E - \langle q(0) - q_0, \delta(0) \rangle_E.$$

This quantity vanishes for any  $\delta$  if and only if we have the relations

$$\begin{cases} q_0 = q(0), \\ q(T) = -M_T y(T), \\ -q'(t) + A^*(t)q(t) = -M_y y(t). \end{cases}$$

This defines the dual variables  $q$  and  $q_0$  in a unique way for a given  $v$  (and thus a given  $y$ ). Those are the Lagrange multipliers of the constrained optimization problem.

Once we have defined those values, the computation of the differential of  $F$  leads to

$$dF(v).h = \partial_v L(v, y[v], q[v], q_0[v]).h = \int_0^T \langle M_v(t)v(t), h(t) \rangle_U dt - \int_0^T \langle B^*q(t), h(t) \rangle_U dt,$$

which is of course the same expression as above.

### 5.4 Ricatti equation

The set of optimality equations (II.15) is in general a complicated system of coupled ODEs that is **not** a Cauchy problem. It is remarkable that its solution can be obtained through the resolution of a Cauchy problem for a nonlin-

ear matrix-valued ordinary differential equation. It has in particular some important applications to the closed-loop stabilization of the initial problem.

**Theorem II.5.17 (Adjoint state and Ricatti equation)**

*Under the previous assumptions, there exists a matrix-valued map  $t \in [0, T] \mapsto E(t)$  that only depends on  $A, B, M_y, M_v, M_T$ , and  $T$ , such that the adjoint state  $q$  in the previous theorem satisfies*

$$q(t) = -E(t)y(t), \quad \forall t \in [0, T].$$

*In other words, the optimal control  $\bar{v}$  can be realized, whatever the initial data  $y_0$  is, as a closed-loop control*

$$\bar{v}(t) = -M_v(t)^{-1}B^*(t)E(t)y(t).$$

*Moreover, the function  $E$  is the unique solution in  $[0, T]$  to the following (backward in time) Cauchy problem associated with a Ricatti differential equation*

$$\begin{cases} E'(t) = -M_y(t) + A^*(t)E(t) + E(t)A(t) + E(t)B(t)M_v(t)^{-1}B^*(t)E(t), \\ E(T) = M_T. \end{cases} \quad (\text{II.16})$$

*Finally,  $E(t)$  is symmetric semi-definite positive for any  $t$  and even definite positive if  $M_T$  is definite positive, and we have*

$$\inf_{L^2(0, T, \mathbb{R}^m)} F(v) = \frac{1}{2} \langle E(0)y_0, y_0 \rangle_E.$$

Observe that the Ricatti equation is a matrix-valued nonlinear differential equation which is not necessarily easy to solve. Actually, it is not even clear that the solution exists on the whole time interval  $[0, T]$ ; this will be a consequence of the proof.

**Proof :**

The Cauchy-Lipschitz theorem ensures that (II.16) has a unique solution **locally** around  $t = T$ .

We start by assuming that this solution is defined on the whole time interval  $[0, T]$ . It is clear that  $E^*$  satisfies the same Cauchy problem as  $E$  and thus, by uniqueness,  $E = E^*$ .

Then we define  $y$  to be the unique solution of the Cauchy problem

$$\begin{cases} y'(t) + A(t)y(t) = -B(t)M_v(t)^{-1}B^*(t)E(t)y(t), \\ y(0) = y_0. \end{cases}$$

Then we set

$$q(t) := -E(t)y(t),$$

and

$$v(t) := -M_v(t)^{-1}B^*(t)E(t)y(t).$$

In order to show that such a  $v$  is the optimal control, we need to check all the equations in (II.15). The first two equations and the last two are satisfied by construction, it remains to check the third equation. This is a simple computation

$$\begin{aligned} -q'(t) + A^*(t)q(t) &= E'(t)y(t) + E(t)y'(t) - A^*(t)E(t)y(t) \\ &= -M_y(t)y(t) + E(t)y'(t) \\ &\quad + E(t)[A(t)y(t) + B(t)M_v(t)^{-1}B^*(t)E(t)y(t)] \\ &= -M_y(t)y(t). \end{aligned}$$

This proves the fact that, provided that  $E$  exists, the triple  $(y, v, q)$  is the unique solution of our optimality condition equations.

The fact that the optimal energy is given by  $\frac{1}{2}\langle E(0)y_0, y_0 \rangle_E$  is a simple consequence of Proposition II.5.16 and of the fact that  $\phi(T) = -\langle M_T y(T), y(T) \rangle_E$ , so that

$$\inf_{L^2(0,T;\mathbb{R}^m)} F = F(v) = -\frac{1}{2}\phi(T) + \frac{1}{2} \int_0^T \phi'(t) dt = -\frac{1}{2}\phi(0).$$

As a consequence,  $\phi(0)$  is non-positive for any  $y_0$ , which proves that  $E$  is semi-definite positive.

Moreover, we deduce that  $\frac{1}{2}\langle E(0)y_0, y_0 \rangle_E$  is not larger than the value of the cost functional  $F$  when computed on the control  $v = 0$ . A simple computation of the solution of the ODE without control gives that the following bound holds

$$\langle E(0)y_0, y_0 \rangle_E \leq \left( \|M_T\| + \int_0^T \|M_y\| \right) e^{2 \int_0^T \|A\|} \|y_0\|^2, \quad \forall y_0 \in \mathbb{R}^n.$$

This gives a bound on  $\|E(0)\|$ .

We can now prove the global existence of  $E$  on  $[0, T]$ . Indeed, if we assume that  $E$  is defined on  $[t^*, T]$  for some  $0 \leq t^* < T$ , the previous computation (with the initial time  $t^*$  instead of 0) shows that

$$\begin{aligned} \|E(t^*)\| &\leq \left( \|M_T\| + \int_{t^*}^T \|M_y\| \right) e^{2 \int_{t^*}^T \|A\|} \\ &\leq \left( \|M_T\| + \int_0^T \|M_y\| \right) e^{2 \int_0^T \|A\|}. \end{aligned}$$

It follows that  $E$  is bounded independently of  $t^*$  and therefore can not blow up in finite time. Therefore the existence and uniqueness of  $E$  over the whole time interval  $[0, T]$  is proved. ■

## 6 The HUM control

Let us come back now to the controllability question (and we assume again that  $A$  and  $B$  are time-independent).

We would like to address the question of the characterisation of a **best** control among all the possible controls, if such controls exist. Of course, this notion will depend on some criterion that we would like to choose as a measure of the “quality” or the “cost” of the control.

**The HUM formulation** Assume that  $y_0, y_T$  are such that  $y_T \in R_T(y_0)$ . We can easily prove that the set of admissible controls

$$\text{adm}(y_0, y_T) := \{v \in L^2(0, T; U), y_v(T) = y_T\},$$

is a non-empty convex set which is closed in  $L^2(0, T; U)$ . Therefore, there exists a unique control of minimal  $L^2$ -norm, that we denote by  $v_0$ . It satisfies the optimization problem

$$F(v_0) = \inf_{v \in \text{adm}(y_0, y_T)} F(v), \tag{II.17}$$

where we have introduced

$$F(v) := \frac{1}{2} \int_0^T \|v(t)\|_U^2 dt, \quad \forall v \in L^2(0, T; U).$$

We recall the definition of the solution operator (without initial data)

$$L_T : v \in L^2(0, T; U) \mapsto \int_0^T e^{-(T-s)A} B v(s) ds \in E,$$

in such a way that the (affine) constraint set reads

$$\text{adm}(y_0, y_T) = \{v \in L^2(0, T; U), L_T(v) = y_T - e^{-TA} y_0\}.$$

Since  $v_0$  is a solution of the constrained optimisation problem, we can use the Lagrange multiplier theorem to affirm that there exists a vector  $q_T \in E$  such that

$$dF(v_0).w = \langle q_T, dL_T(v_0).w \rangle_E, \quad \forall w \in L^2(0, T; U).$$

Since  $L_T$  is linear, we have  $dL_T(v_0).w = L_T(w)$  and the differential of the quadratic functional  $F$  is given by

$$dF(v_0).w = \int_0^T \langle v_0(s), w(s) \rangle_U ds, \quad \forall w \in L^2(0, T; U).$$

It follows that  $v_0$  satisfies, for some  $q_T \in E$  and for any  $w \in L^2(0, T; U)$  the equation

$$\int_0^T \langle v_0(s), w(s) \rangle_U ds = \int_0^T \langle q_T, e^{-(T-s)A} B w(s) \rangle_E ds,$$

which gives

$$v_0(s) = B^* e^{-(T-s)A^*} q_T. \quad (\text{II.18})$$

This proves that the HUM control  $v_0$  has a special form as shown above. In particular if one wants to compute  $v_0$  we only have to determine the Lagrange multiplier  $q_T$ . To this end, we plug the form (II.18) into the equation that  $v_0$  has to fulfill

$$y_T = e^{-TA} y_0 + \left( \int_0^T e^{-(T-s)A} B B^* e^{-(T-s)A^*} ds \right) q_T,$$

which is a linear system in  $q_T$  that we write

$$\Lambda q_T = y_T - e^{-TA} y_0, \quad (\text{II.19})$$

where we have introduced the Gramian matrix

$$\Lambda \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \int_0^T e^{-(T-s)A} B B^* e^{-(T-s)A^*} ds.$$

We observe that  $\Lambda$  is a symmetric positive semi-definite matrix and that is definite if and only if the Kalman criterion is satisfied.

Finally, the HUM control  $v_0$  can be computed by solving first the linear system (II.19), whose unique solution is denoted by  $q_{T, \text{opt}}$  and then by using (II.18).

It is also of interest to observe that the optimal  $q_{T, \text{opt}} \in E$  is the unique solution of the optimization problem

$$J(q_T) = \inf_{q_T \in E} J(q_T), \quad (\text{II.20})$$

where we have introduced the functional

$$J(q_T) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \frac{1}{2} \int_0^T \left\| B^* e^{-(T-s)A^*} q_T \right\|_U^2 ds + \langle y_0, e^{-TA^*} q_T \rangle_E - \langle y_T, q_T \rangle_E.$$

One can prove, by the Fenchel-Rockafellar duality theorem, that  $J$  is the adjoint problem associated with the initial optimisation problem (II.17).

Observe that (II.20) is an unconstrained finite dimensional optimization problem whereas (II.17) is a constrained infinite dimensional optimization problem. This is one of the reason why it is often more suitable to solve (II.20) instead of (II.17).

Actually, the explicit computation of the matrix  $\Lambda$  and its inversion can be quite heavy (in large dimension) and, in practice, we may prefer to solve the linear system (II.19) by using an iterative method (like the conjugate gradient for instance) that only necessitates to compute matrix-vector products. For any given  $q_T$ , the product  $\Lambda q_T$ , can be obtained with the following general procedure:



- Solve the adjoint (backward) equation  $-q'(t) + A^*q(t) = 0$  with the final data  $q(T) = q_T$ , in the present case, it gives

$$q(t) = e^{-(T-t)A^*} q_T.$$

- Define the control  $v$  by  $v(t) = B^*q(t)$ .
- Solve the primal (forward) problem  $y'(t) + Ay(t) = Bv(t)$ , with initial data  $y(0) = 0$ . In the present case it gives

$$y(t) = \int_0^t e^{-(t-s)A} Bv(s) ds.$$

- The value of  $\Lambda_{q_T}$  is then given by

$$\Lambda_{q_T} = y(T),$$

since we have

$$\begin{aligned} y(T) &= \int_0^T e^{-(T-s)A} Bv(s) ds \\ &= \int_0^T e^{-(T-s)A} BB^*q(s) ds \\ &= \int_0^T e^{-(T-s)A} BB^* e^{-(T-s)A^*} q_T ds \end{aligned}$$

### Remark II.6.18

*At the end of this analysis, we have actually proved that the optimal control in  $L^2(0, T; U)$  (the HUM control) has the particular form (II.18), which proves in particular that  $v_0$  is smooth and thus the ODE system is satisfied in the usual sense for this control.*

### Remark II.6.19

*Our analysis shows, as a side effect, that  $v_0$  is the unique possible control for our system that we can write under the form (II.18).*

### Exercise II.6.20

*Assume that the pair  $(A, B)$  is controllable, and let  $T > 0$  given. Show that there exists  $\varepsilon > 0$  such that for any  $y_0, y_T \in E$ , there exists a control for our problem that belongs to  $C^\infty([0, T])$  and such that  $\text{Supp } v \subset [\varepsilon, T - \varepsilon]$ .*

## 7 How much it costs ? Observability inequalities

We can now ask the question of computing the cost of the control. We suppose given  $A, B$ , the initial data  $y_0$  and the target  $y_T$ .

The best control  $v_0$  (the so-called HUM control) is given as a solution of the optimization problem described above and we have the following result.

**Proposition II.7.21**

Assume that the Kalman rank condition is satisfied for the pair  $(A, B)$ , then the optimal cost of control from  $y_0$  to  $y_T$  for our system is given by

$$\int_0^T \|v_0(t)\|_U^2 dt = \sup_{q_T \in E} \frac{|\langle y_T, q_T \rangle_E - \langle y_0, e^{-TA^*} q_T \rangle_E|^2}{\langle \Lambda q_T, q_T \rangle_E},$$

where  $\Lambda$  is the Gramian operator that we built in the previous section.

**Proof :**

Let  $C$  be the value of the supremum in the right-hand side (this supremum is finite since the quantity is homogeneous in  $q_T$  and, by the Kalman condition, we know that  $\langle \Lambda q_T, q_T \rangle_E \neq 0$  as soon as  $q_T \neq 0$ ).

Let  $q_{T,opt}$  be the unique solution to (II.19), in such a way that  $v_0(s) = B^* e^{-sA^*} q_{T,opt}$ . We observe first that

$$\langle \Lambda q_{T,opt}, q_{T,opt} \rangle_E = \int_0^T \|B^* e^{-sA^*} q_{T,opt}\|_U^2 ds = \int_0^T \|v_0(s)\|_U^2 ds,$$

and second, by (II.19), we have

$$\langle \Lambda q_{T,opt}, q_{T,opt} \rangle_E = \langle y_T, q_{T,opt} \rangle_E - \langle y_0, e^{-TA^*} q_{T,opt} \rangle_E.$$

It follows that

$$C \geq \frac{|\langle y_T, q_{T,opt} \rangle_E - \langle y_0, e^{-TA^*} q_{T,opt} \rangle_E|^2}{\langle \Lambda q_{T,opt}, q_{T,opt} \rangle_E} = \langle \Lambda q_{T,opt}, q_{T,opt} \rangle_E = \int_0^T \|v_0(s)\|_U^2 ds.$$

Conversely, if  $v$  is any control that drives the solution from  $y_0$  to  $y_T$  we see from (II.5) and the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality that

$$|\langle y_T, q_T \rangle_E - \langle y_0, e^{-TA^*} q_T \rangle_E| \leq \left( \int_0^T \|v(s)\|_U^2 ds \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \langle \Lambda q_T, q_T \rangle_E^{\frac{1}{2}}.$$

Taking the square of this inequality and then the supremum over all the possible  $q_T$  gives that

$$C \leq \int_0^T \|v(s)\|_U^2 ds,$$

and since this is true for all possible controls, this is in particular true for the optimal control  $v_0$  and we get

$$C \leq \int_0^T \|v_0(s)\|_U^2 ds.$$

■

The previous result gives an estimate of the control cost, in the case where the pair  $(A, B)$  is controllable. We can actually be a little bit more precise: we shall prove that the boundedness of the supremum in the previous condition is a necessary and sufficient condition for the system to be controllable from  $y_0$  to  $y_T$ .

**Theorem II.7.22**

Let  $A, B$  be any pair of matrices (we do not assume that the Kalman condition holds). Then, System (II.1) is controllable from  $y_0$  to  $y_T$  if and only if, for some  $C \geq 0$ , the following inequality holds

$$|\langle y_T, q_T \rangle_E - \langle y_0, e^{-TA^*} q_T \rangle_E|^2 \leq C^2 \int_0^T \|B^* e^{-(T-s)A^*} q_T\|_U^2 ds, \quad \forall q_T \in E. \quad (\text{II.21})$$

Moreover, the best constant  $C$  in this inequality is exactly equal the  $L^2(0, T; U)$  norm of the HUM control  $v_0$  from  $y_0$  to  $y_T$ .

The above inequality is called an **observability inequality** on the adjoint equation. It amounts to control some information on any solution of the problem (in the left-hand side of the inequality) by the **observation** (which is the right-hand side term of the inequality). The operator  $B^*$  is called the observation operator.

We also note that, by definition of the Gramian  $\Lambda$ , the right-hand side of the required observability inequality can also be written as follows

$$C^2 \langle \Lambda q_T, q_T \rangle_E.$$

**Proof :**

Since  $e^{-TA}$  is invertible <sup>1</sup> we can always write

$$y_T = e^{-TA} \left( e^{TA} y_T \right).$$

So that the control problem is the same if we replace  $y_T$  by 0 and  $y_0$  by  $y_0 - e^{TA} y_T$  and we see that the left-hand side in the inequality is changed accordingly.

From now on, we will thus assume without loss of generality that  $y_T = 0$  and that  $y_0$  is any element in  $E$ .

- We first assume that there exists a control  $v \in L^2(0, T)$  that drives  $y_0$  to 0 at time  $T$ . Hence the set  $\text{adm}(y_0, 0)$  is not empty. We define  $v_0$  to be the unique minimal  $L^2$ -norm element in  $\text{adm}(y_0, 0)$ . The same argument as in the previous proposition shows that for any  $q_T$  we have

$$|\langle y_0, e^{-TA^*} q_T \rangle_E|^2 \leq \left( \int_0^T \|v_0(s)\|_U^2 ds \right) \left( \int_0^T \|B^* e^{-(T-s)A^*} q_T\|^2 ds \right).$$

This proves (II.21) with  $C = \|v_0\|_{L^2(0, T; U)}$ .

- Assume now that (II.21) holds for some  $C > 0$ . We would like to prove that  $\text{adm}(y_0, 0)$  is not empty. The idea is to replace the constraint  $v \in \text{adm}(y_0, 0)$  (that is  $y(T) = 0$ ) in the optimization problem (II.17) by a penalty term.

For any  $\varepsilon > 0$ , we set

$$F_\varepsilon(v) = \frac{1}{2} \int_0^T \|v(s)\|_U^2 ds + \frac{1}{2\varepsilon} \|y(T)\|_E^2,$$

where in this expression,  $y$  is the unique solution of (II.1) starting from the initial data  $y_0$ .

The last term penalizes the fact that we would like  $y(T) = 0$ . Formally, we expect that, as  $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0$ , this term will impose  $y(T)$  to get close from  $y_T$ .

We consider now the following optimization problem: to find  $v_\varepsilon \in L^2(0, T; U)$  such that

$$F_\varepsilon(v_\varepsilon) = \inf_{v \in L^2(0, T; U)} F_\varepsilon(v). \quad (\text{II.22})$$

This functional exactly falls into the framework of the LQ optimal control problems that we studied in Section 5, in the particular case where

$$M_v(t) = \text{Id}, \quad M_y(t) = 0, \quad \forall t \in [0, T], \quad \text{and} \quad M_T = \frac{1}{\varepsilon} \text{Id}.$$

The characterisation theorem II.5.14 implies that this functional  $F_\varepsilon$  has a unique minimiser  $v_\varepsilon$  which is characterised by the following set of equations

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} y'_\varepsilon(t) + Ay_\varepsilon(t) = Bv_\varepsilon(t), \\ y_\varepsilon(0) = y_0, \\ -q'_\varepsilon(t) + A^*q_\varepsilon(t) = 0, \\ q_\varepsilon(T) = -\frac{1}{\varepsilon} y_\varepsilon(T), \\ v_\varepsilon(t) = B^*q_\varepsilon(t). \end{array} \right.$$

<sup>1</sup>this will not be true anymore for infinite dimensional problems when the underlying equation is not time reversible, which is precisely the case of parabolic equations

Our goal is to study the behavior of  $(v_\varepsilon, y_\varepsilon, q_\varepsilon)$  when  $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0$ . To this end, we try to obtain uniform bounds on those quantities.

To this end, we multiply (in the sense of the euclidean inner product of  $E$ ) the state equation (the first one) by  $q_\varepsilon(t)$  and we integrate the result over  $(0, T)$ . Using integration by parts and the other equations in the optimality system above, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \int_0^T \|v_\varepsilon\|^2 dt &= \int_0^T \langle v_\varepsilon, B^* q_\varepsilon \rangle_U dt \\ &= \int_0^T \langle B v_\varepsilon, q_\varepsilon \rangle_E dt \\ &= \int_0^T \langle y'_\varepsilon + A y_\varepsilon, q_\varepsilon \rangle_E dt \\ &= \langle y_\varepsilon(T), q_\varepsilon(T) \rangle_E - \langle y_0, q_\varepsilon(0) \rangle_E + \int_0^T \langle y_\varepsilon, -q'_\varepsilon + A^* q_\varepsilon \rangle_E dt \\ &= -\frac{1}{\varepsilon} \|y_\varepsilon(T)\|^2 - \langle y_0, q_\varepsilon(0) \rangle_E. \end{aligned}$$

It follows that

$$\|v_\varepsilon\|_{L^2(0,T,U)}^2 + \frac{1}{\varepsilon} \|y_\varepsilon(T)\|^2 = -\langle y_0, q_\varepsilon(0) \rangle_E.$$

And, if we set  $q_{T,\varepsilon} = q_\varepsilon(T)$ , we can write this formula by using only the adjoint variable

$$\int_0^T \|B^* e^{-(T-t)A^*} q_{T,\varepsilon}\|^2 dt + \varepsilon \|q_{T,\varepsilon}\|^2 = -\langle y_0, e^{-TA^*} q_{T,\varepsilon} \rangle_E. \quad (\text{II.23})$$

We use now the observability inequality (II.21) (where we recall that  $y_T$  was taken to be 0 here). This inequality exactly gives us a bound on the right-hand side term

$$-\langle y_0, e^{-TA^*} q_{T,\varepsilon} \rangle_E \leq C \left( \int_0^T \|B^* e^{-(T-t)A^*} q_{T,\varepsilon}\|^2 dt \right)^{\frac{1}{2}}.$$

We deduce that

$$\begin{aligned} \|v_\varepsilon\|_{L^2}^2 &= \int_0^T \|B^* e^{-(T-t)A^*} q_{T,\varepsilon}\|^2 dt \leq C^2, \\ \varepsilon \|q_{T,\varepsilon}\|^2 &\leq C^2. \end{aligned}$$

From those estimates we obtain that  $(v_\varepsilon)_\varepsilon$  is bounded in  $L^2(0, T; U)$  and therefore we can extract a subsequence  $(v_{\varepsilon_k})_k$  that weakly converges towards some  $v \in L^2(0, T; U)$ . Let  $y$  be the solution of (II.1) associated with this control  $v$  and the initial data  $y_0$ . Since the solution operator  $L_T$  is continuous from  $L^2(0, T; U)$  into  $E$ , we deduce that  $(L_T(v_{\varepsilon_k}))_k$  weakly converges towards  $L_T(v)$  as  $k \rightarrow \infty$  (note however that  $E$  is finite dimensional so that this convergence is also strong). It follows that  $y_\varepsilon(T) \rightarrow y(T)$  as  $\varepsilon \rightarrow 0$

Moreover, by definition of  $q_{T,\varepsilon}$ , we have the relation

$$y_\varepsilon(T) = -\varepsilon q_{T,\varepsilon},$$

and from the bound below we deduce that

$$\|y_\varepsilon(T)\|_E \leq \varepsilon \|q_{T,\varepsilon}\|_E \leq C\sqrt{\varepsilon} \xrightarrow{\varepsilon \rightarrow 0} 0.$$

Gathering all the above properties, we have shown that the weak limit  $v$  is such that the solution  $y$  satisfies

$$y(T) = 0,$$

which exactly means that the control  $v$  drives the solution of our system from 0 to  $y_T$ , or in other words  $v \in \text{adm}(y_0, 0)$ .

This set being non empty we can consider the minimal  $L^2$  norm control  $v_0$  and, from the first part of the proof we know that necessarily we have

$$C \leq \|v_0\|_{L^2(0,T;U)} \leq \|v\|_{L^2(0,T;U)}.$$

Coming back to the bound on  $v_\varepsilon$  obtained above we see that

$$\limsup_{k \rightarrow \infty} \|v_{\varepsilon_k}\|_{L^2(0,T;U)} \leq C,$$

and since  $v$  is the weak limit of  $(v_{\varepsilon_k})_k$  we conclude by usual properties of weak convergence in an Hilbert space that the convergence is actually strong and that we have the equality  $\|v\|_{L^2(0,T;U)} = C$ .

This implies in particular that  $\|v\|_{L^2(0,T;U)} \leq \|v_0\|_{L^2(0,T;U)}$  and since  $v_0$  is the unique minimal  $L^2$ -norm control, we deduce that  $v = v_0$ . In particular  $C = \|v_0\|_{L^2(0,T;U)}$ .

The standard uniqueness argument finally shows that the whole family  $(v_\varepsilon)_\varepsilon$  strongly converges towards the HUM control  $v_0$ .

Observe that the family of the optimal adjoint states for the penalized problems  $(q_{T,\varepsilon})_\varepsilon$  may not converge in this setting (except in the case where the Kalman rank condition is satisfied). ■

### Remark II.7.23

*If we have no other information on the matrices  $A$ ,  $B$  or on the initial data  $y_0$ , the only hope to bound the right-hand side of (II.23) is to write*

$$-\langle y_0, e^{-TA^*} q_{T,\varepsilon} \rangle_E \leq \|y_0\| \|e^{-TA^*}\| \|q_{T,\varepsilon}\|,$$

*and to use the Young inequality to absorb the norm of  $q_{T,\varepsilon}$  by the second term in the left-hand side to obtain*

$$\int_0^T \|B^* e^{-(T-t)A^*} q_{T,\varepsilon}\|^2 dt + \varepsilon \|q_{T,\varepsilon}\|^2 \leq \frac{1}{\varepsilon} \|y_0\|^2 \|e^{-TA^*}\|^2.$$

*This estimate is clearly useless since it does not provide a uniform bound on the control  $v_\varepsilon$  (and this is of course what is expected!).*

As a conclusion of this analysis, we have converted a controllability question (which is a problem of proving the existence of some mathematical object satisfying some requirements) into an *observability* question which is : can we prove an *a priori* inequality like (II.21) that concerns solutions to an uncontrolled equation (the adjoint problem).

### Remark II.7.24

*If, for any  $q_T$ , we introduce  $t \mapsto q(t)$  the solution of the adjoint equation*

$$-q'(t) + A^*q(t) = 0, \quad q(T) = q_T,$$

*the observability inequality can be written as follows*

$$|\langle y_T, q_T \rangle_E - \langle y_0, q(0) \rangle_E|^2 \leq C^2 \int_0^T \|B^* q(s)\|_U^2 ds, \quad \forall q_T \in \mathbb{R}^n,$$

*which is slightly more general since it does not require any semi-group theory (and in particular can be generalised to non-autonomous equations).*

Let us consider two particular cases of interest:

- **Exact controllability** : we assume that  $y_0 = 0$  and  $y_T \in \mathbb{R}^n$  is any target. The control cost is denoted by  $C(0, y_T)$  and is the best constant in the inequality

$$|\langle y_T, q_T \rangle_E|^2 \leq C(0, y_T)^2 \int_0^T \|B^* e^{-(T-s)A^*} q_T\|_U^2 ds, \quad \forall q_T \in E. \quad (\text{II.24})$$

- **Null-controllability** : we assume that  $y_T = 0$  and  $y_0 \in E$  is any initial data. The control cost is denoted by  $C(y_0, 0)$  and is the best constant in the inequality

$$|\langle y_0, e^{-TA^*} q_T \rangle_E|^2 \leq C(y_0, 0)^2 \int_0^T \|B^* e^{-(T-s)A^*} q_T\|_U^2 ds, \quad \forall q_T \in E. \quad (\text{II.25})$$

In the finite dimensional setting those two cases are very similar but it will make some difference when we will study parabolic PDEs.

Let  $\phi$  be a normalized eigenvector of  $A^*$  associated with the eigenvalue  $\lambda$  and we assume that  $\mathcal{R}e(\lambda) > 0$  (we mimick here the expected behavior of a parabolic PDE). Let us evaluate the costs  $C(\phi, 0)$  and  $C(0, \phi)$ .

- We first take  $q_T = \phi$  in (II.24) (with  $y_T = \phi$ ) to get

$$C(0, \phi)^2 \geq \frac{2\mathcal{R}e(\lambda)}{\|B^*\phi\|_U^2(1 - e^{-2T\mathcal{R}e(\lambda)})},$$

and we can obtain a rough bound from below

$$C(0, \phi)^2 \geq \frac{2\mathcal{R}e(\lambda)}{\|B^*\phi\|_U^2}.$$

This illustrates the fact that, if  $B^*$  is a given bounded operator, the cost of the exact controllability for a given eigenmode increases at least with the dissipation rate  $\mathcal{R}e(\lambda)$ . In the limit  $\mathcal{R}e(\lambda) \rightarrow \infty$ , this cost is therefore blowing up.

This is not a good news if one imagines that we eventually want to control parabolic PDEs which are typically based on operators with sequences of eigenvalues that tends to infinity.

The *physical* interpretation of this phenomenon is clear : the natural behavior of such a system for large values of  $\mathcal{R}e(\lambda)$  is to strongly dissipate the solution with time which is exactly the converse of the fact that we require the solution to be driven to a constant normalized state  $\phi$  at time  $T$ .

This is the first appearance of the fact that, for dissipative systems (i.e. parabolic PDEs), the exact controllability property is not a good notion.

- Let us do the same computation in (II.25) by taking  $y_0 = \phi$  and  $q_T = \phi$ , we get

$$C(\phi, 0)^2 \geq \frac{2\mathcal{R}e(\lambda)e^{-2\mathcal{R}e(\lambda)T}}{\|B^*\phi\|_U^2}.$$

This is a much better behavior : if  $B^*\phi$  remains away from zero, the lower bound of the cost exponentially decreases when  $\mathcal{R}e(\lambda)$  increases. Of course, this is only a lower bound and thus it does not give any information on the boundedness of  $C(\phi, 0)$  itself but it seems to be reasonable to expect null controllability for a dissipative system, and bounds that are in some sense, uniform in  $\lambda$ .

Observe that, in both cases, the observability cost for one single mode  $\phi$  depends on the size of  $\|B^*\phi\|_U$ . The smaller this quantity is, the larger is the observability cost.

**Global notions** If we want to come back to more global properties (namely that are independent of the initial data and of the target) we have the following characterisations.

**Theorem II.7.25**

1. System (II.1) is exactly controllable at time  $T$  if and only if for some  $C_{obs,exact} \geq 0$  we have

$$\|q_T\|_E^2 \leq C_{obs,exact}^2 \int_0^T \|B^* e^{-sA^*} q_T\|_U^2 ds, \quad \forall q_T \in \mathbb{R}^n.$$

If this inequality holds, then for any  $y_0, y_T$  there exists a control  $v \in \text{adm}(y_0, y_T)$  such that

$$\|v\|_{L^2(0,T;U)} \leq C_{obs,exact} \|y_T - e^{-TA} y_0\|_E.$$

2. System (II.1) is null-controllable at time  $T$  if and only if for some  $C_{obs,null} \geq 0$  we have

$$\|e^{-TA^*} q_T\|_E^2 \leq C_{obs,null}^2 \int_0^T \|B^* e^{-sA^*} q_T\|_U^2 ds, \quad \forall q_T \in \mathbb{R}^n.$$

If this inequality holds, then for any  $y_0$  there exists a control  $v \in \text{adm}(y_0, 0)$  such that

$$\|v\|_{L^2(0,T;U)} \leq C_{obs,null} \|y_0\|_E.$$

Of course, in the finite dimensional setting the two notions are equivalent but the values of the constants  $C_{obs,exact}$  and  $C_{obs,null}$  may not be the same.

**Exercise II.7.26 (Asymptotics of the observability constants, see [Sei88])**

The above observability constants actually depend on the control time  $T$  and it is clear that this cost should blow up when  $T$  gets smaller.

More precisely, we can show (by mentioning explicitly the dependence in  $T$  of the constant) that

$$C_{obs,exact,T} \underset{T \rightarrow 0}{\sim} \frac{\gamma}{T^{K+\frac{1}{2}}},$$

where  $K$  is the smallest integer such that

$$\text{rank}(B|AB|\dots|A^K B) = n,$$

and  $\gamma > 0$  is a computable constant depending only on  $A$  and  $B$ .





## Chapter III

# Controllability of abstract parabolic PDEs

### 1 General setting

Let us consider now an abstract setting :  $E$  and  $U$  are two Hilbert spaces

- $\mathcal{A} : D(\mathcal{A}) \subset E \rightarrow E$  is some unbounded operator<sup>1</sup> such that  $-\mathcal{A}$  generates a strongly continuous semi-group in  $E$ . The semi-group will be denoted by  $t \mapsto e^{-t\mathcal{A}} \in L(E)$ . We refer to usual textbooks in functional analysis for precise definition of those concepts (see for instance [Bre83], [Cor07, Appendix A], [TW09], [EN00]). We will also give a simple construction of the heat semi-group at the beginning of Chapter IV.

We recall that a necessary and sufficient condition for the existence of this semigroup is (Hille-Yosida theorem) that  $D(\mathcal{A})$  is dense in  $E$  and

$$\exists \omega \in \mathbb{R}, M \geq 1, \text{ s.t. } (\lambda I + \mathcal{A}) \text{ is invertible for any } \lambda > \omega \text{ and } \|(\lambda I + \mathcal{A})^{-m}\| \leq M(\lambda - \omega)^{-m}, \forall m \geq 0.$$

We will sometimes need to assume that the semi-group is analytic which means that there exists an analytic extension  $z \mapsto e^{-z\mathcal{A}}$  in a sector of  $\mathbb{C}$  of the form

$$S_\alpha = \{z \in \mathbb{C}, \operatorname{Re}(z) \geq 0, \text{ and } |\Im z| \leq \alpha \operatorname{Re} z\},$$

for some  $\alpha > 0$ . This property always holds in the case for parabolic equations.

The adjoint semi-group will be denoted by  $t \mapsto e^{-t\mathcal{A}^*}$ .

- $\mathcal{B} : U \rightarrow D(\mathcal{A}^*)'$  the control operator. It is actually more easy to work with the adjoint  $\mathcal{B}^*$  of  $\mathcal{B}$ , which is, by definition an operator from  $D(\mathcal{A}^*)$  into  $U$  (since we identify  $U$  with its dual space).
- We assume that  $\mathcal{B}$  is admissible in the following sense

$$\left( s \mapsto \mathcal{B}^* e^{-s\mathcal{A}^*} q_T \right) \in L^2(0, T; U), \quad \forall q_T \in E,$$

and moreover, there exists a  $C > 0$  such that

$$\int_0^T \|\mathcal{B}^* e^{-(T-t)\mathcal{A}^*} q_T\|_U^2 dt \leq C^2 \|q_T\|_E^2, \quad \forall q_T \in E.$$

In practice, it is enough to check the above inequality for  $q_T \in D(\mathcal{A}^*)$  since  $D(\mathcal{A}^*)$  is dense in  $E$ .

The (formal) control problem we are looking at is the following

$$\begin{cases} \partial_t y + \mathcal{A}y = \mathcal{B}v \text{ in } ]0, T[, \\ y(0) = y_0. \end{cases} \quad (\text{III.1})$$

<sup>1</sup>let say self-adjoint with compact resolvent, if you want to simplify

The suitable meaning we give to this problem is by duality.

**Theorem III.1.1 (Well-posedness in a dual sense)**

For any  $y_0 \in E$  and  $v \in L^2(0, T; U)$ , there exists a unique  $y = y_{v, y_0} \in C^0([0, T], E)$  such that

$$\langle y(t), q_t \rangle_E - \langle y_0, e^{-tA^*} q_t \rangle_E = \int_0^t \langle v(s), \mathcal{B}^* e^{-(t-s)A^*} q_t \rangle_U ds, \quad \forall t \in [0, T], \forall q_t \in E.$$

Moreover, there exists  $C > 0$  such that

$$\sup_{t \in [0, T]} \|y(t)\|_E \leq C(\|y_0\|_E + \|v\|_{L^2(0, T; U)}).$$

**Proof :**

This is a consequence of the admissibility assumption for  $\mathcal{B}$  and of the Riesz representation theorem.

- Let us fix a  $t \in [0, T]$ . We consider the linear map

$$q_t \in E \longmapsto \langle y_0, e^{-tA^*} q_t \rangle_E + \int_0^t \langle v(s), \mathcal{B}^* e^{-(t-s)A^*} q_t \rangle_U ds.$$

Thanks to the admissibility condition for  $\mathcal{B}$ , we see that this linear map is continuous on  $E$ . Thanks to the Riesz representation theorem, we deduce that there exists a unique element  $y_t \in E$  satisfying the equality

$$\langle y_t, q_t \rangle_E = \langle y_0, e^{-tA^*} q_t \rangle_E + \int_0^t \langle v(s), \mathcal{B}^* e^{-(t-s)A^*} q_t \rangle_U ds, \quad \forall q_t \in E.$$

Additionally, we have the bound

$$\|y_t\|_E \leq C(\|y_0\|_E + \|v\|_{L^2(0, T; U)}),$$

for some constant  $C > 0$ .

- We set  $y(t) = y_t$  for any  $t$ . It is clear, by definition, that  $y(0) = y_0$ . It remains to check that the map  $y$  is strongly continuous in time.

Let  $(t_n)_n \subset [0, T]$  a sequence that converges towards some  $t \in [0, T]$ , we need to prove that  $y(t_n) \rightarrow y(t)$  in  $E$ . To this end, we consider  $(q_{t_n})_n \subset E$  a sequence that weakly converges towards some  $q_t \in E$  and we want to show that

$$\langle y(t_n), q_{t_n} \rangle_E \xrightarrow{n \rightarrow \infty} \langle y(t), q_t \rangle_E.$$

We consider  $\bar{v} \in L^2(\mathbb{R})$  the extension of  $v$  by zero outside the interval  $(0, T)$ . We can write

$$\begin{aligned} \langle y(t_n), q_{t_n} \rangle_E &= \langle y_0, e^{-t_n A^*} q_{t_n} \rangle_E + \int_0^{t_n} \langle v(s), \mathcal{B}^* e^{-(t_n-s)A^*} q_{t_n} \rangle_U ds \\ &= \langle e^{-t_n A} y_0, q_{t_n} \rangle_E + \int_0^{t_n} \langle v(t_n - s), \mathcal{B}^* e^{-sA^*} q_{t_n} \rangle_U ds \\ &= \langle e^{-t_n A} y_0, q_{t_n} \rangle_E + \int_0^T \langle \bar{v}(t_n - s), \mathcal{B}^* e^{-sA^*} q_{t_n} \rangle_E ds. \end{aligned}$$

The first term is treated by the weak-strong convergence property and using the strong continuity of the semi-group. The second term is treated in the same way by using:

- The admissibility condition that leads to the weak convergence of  $s \mapsto \mathcal{B}^* e^{-sA^*} q_{t_n}$  in  $L^2(0, T, U)$  and the strong convergence of the translations  $s \mapsto \bar{v}(t_n - s)$  in  $L^2(0, T, U)$ .

Actually, we shall also encounter cases where the admissibility condition for  $\mathcal{B}$  does not hold exactly as written above. More precisely, assume that there exists an Hilbert space  $F$  continuously and densely embedded in  $E$  and such that

$$\left( t \mapsto \mathcal{B}^* e^{-s\mathcal{A}^*} q_T \right) \in L^2(0, T; U), \quad \forall q_T \in F,$$

and

$$\int_0^T \|\mathcal{B}^* e^{-(T-t)\mathcal{A}^*} q_T\|_U^2 dt \leq C^2 \|q_T\|_F^2, \quad \forall q_T \in F.$$

In that case, we may consider the dual space  $F'$  (more precisely, its representation obtained by using  $E$  as a pivot space) and prove the following result

**Theorem III.1.2 (Well-posedness in a dual sense - weaker form)**

*Under the assumptions above, for any  $y_0 \in E$  and  $v \in L^2(0, T; U)$ , there exists a unique  $y = y_{v, y_0} \in \mathcal{C}^0([0, T], F')$  such that*

$$\langle y(t), q_t \rangle_{F', F} - \langle y_0, e^{-t\mathcal{A}^*} q_t \rangle_E = \int_0^t \langle v(s), \mathcal{B}^* e^{-(t-s)\mathcal{A}^*} q_t \rangle_U ds, \quad \forall t \in [0, T], \forall q_t \in F.$$

*Moreover, if  $F$  is stable by the semi-group generated by  $\mathcal{A}^*$ , the above definition can be extended to any initial data  $y_0 \in F'$ .*

Here also we have seen the important role played by the adjoint problem (which is a backward in time parabolic problem)

$$-\partial_t q + \mathcal{A}^* q = 0, \tag{III.2}$$

## 2 Examples

Let  $\Omega$  be a bounded smooth connected domain of  $\mathbb{R}^d$ . Let  $\omega$  be a non empty open subset of  $\Omega$  and  $\Gamma_0$  a non empty open subset of  $\partial\Omega$ .

- **Distributed control for the heat equation.**

We consider the problem

$$\begin{cases} \partial_t y - \Delta y = \mathbf{1}_\omega v, & \text{in } \Omega \\ y = 0, & \text{on } \partial\Omega. \end{cases}$$

The natural state space is  $E = L^2(\Omega)$ , the control space is also  $U = L^2(\Omega)$  (we could have defined  $U = L^2(\omega)$  without any real difference), the domain of  $\mathcal{A}$  is  $D(\mathcal{A}) = H^2(\Omega) \cap H_0^1(\Omega)$ , and the control operator is  $\mathcal{B} = \mathbf{1}_\omega$ , so that we get also  $\mathcal{B}^* = \mathbf{1}_\omega$ .

- **(Dirichlet) Boundary control for the heat equation.**

Let us consider the problem

$$\begin{cases} \partial_t y - \Delta y = 0, & \text{in } \Omega \\ y = \mathbf{1}_{\Gamma_0} v, & \text{on } \partial\Omega. \end{cases}$$

Here the control operator  $\mathcal{B}$  is not so easy to define and it is in fact easier to define its adjoint  $\mathcal{B}^*$  (through a formal integration by parts). More precisely, we set

$$\mathcal{B}^* := \mathbf{1}_{\Gamma_0} \partial_n.$$

In order for the admissibility condition for this operator to hold, we see that we have, for instance, to work in the space  $F = H_0^1(\Omega)$ . Indeed, in that case, one can show by standard arguments that

$$t \mapsto e^{-tA^*} q_T \in L^2(0, T, H^2(\Omega)), \quad \forall q_T \in F,$$

and by trace theorems

$$t \mapsto \partial_n(e^{-tA^*} q_T) \in L^2(0, T, H^{1/2}(\partial\Omega)) \subset L^2(0, T, L^2(\partial\Omega)).$$

Actually, one may use for any any of the spaces  $F = D(\mathcal{A}^s)$  with  $s > 1/2$ .

• **Distributed control for parabolic systems.**

In the last part of the course, we will be interested in coupled parabolic systems, as for instance the following problem

$$\begin{cases} \partial_t y - \Delta y + C(t, x)y = 1_\omega Bv, & \text{in } \Omega \\ y = 0, & \text{on } \partial\Omega, \end{cases} \tag{III.3}$$

where  $y$  is now a  $n$ -component function. The state space is  $E = (L^2(\Omega))^n$ , the control space is  $U = (L^2(\Omega))^m$ ,  $B \in M_{n,m}(\mathbb{R})$  is the control matrix and  $C(t, x) \in M_{n,n}(\mathbb{R})$  is the coupling matrix.

In that case, the control operator is  $\mathcal{B} = 1_\omega B$  and its adjoint is  $\mathcal{B}^* = 1_\omega B^*$ .

• **(Dirichlet) Boundary control for parabolic systems.**

Similarly, we can consider the boundary control problem

$$\begin{cases} \partial_t y - \Delta y + C(t, x)y = 0, & \text{in } \Omega \\ y = 1_{\Gamma_0} Bv, & \text{on } \partial\Omega. \end{cases} \tag{III.4}$$

The definition of the functional spaces and of the operator are clear.

• **More general examples:**

Of course we may consider a large number of other examples such as : time- and or space-dependent diffusion coefficients, different diffusion operators for each component, first or second order coupling terms, non linear terms, etc ...

### 3 Controllability - Observability

The general definitions for approximate/exact/null- controllability questions are formally the same as before.

We have already seen in the first chapter that exact controllability for parabolic equations is certainly not a suitable notion. We may in fact prove that, in general, the set of reachable functions for the heat equation with a distributed control supported on a strict subset of  $\Omega$  is a very small set. For instance, usual regularity properties for such PDEs show that any reachable target must be smooth (at least  $C^\infty$ ) in  $\Omega \setminus \bar{\omega}$ .

We will thus restrict our attention now on the approximate and null-controllability properties. By adapting the arguments given in the finite dimensional case, we can prove the following properties.

**Theorem III.3.3 (Approximate controllability and Unique continuation)**

*Our system (III.1) is approximately controllable at time  $T > 0$  if and only if the adjoint system (III.2) satisfies the unique continuation property with respect to the observation operator  $\mathcal{B}^*$ , namely : for any solution  $q$  of (III.2) with  $q(T) \in F$ , we have*

$$\left( \mathcal{B}^* q(t) = 0, \forall t \in (0, T) \right) \implies q \equiv 0.$$

With the semi-group notation, the Unique Continuation property writes

$$\left( \mathcal{B}^* e^{-(T-t)\mathcal{A}^*} q_T = 0, \forall t \in (0, T) \right) \implies q_T = 0.$$

Notice that, if the semi-group generated by  $-\mathcal{A}^*$  is analytic, then the unique continuation property does not depend on  $T$ , and thus so is the approximate controllability.

**Proof :**

- Assume that the Unique Continuation property does not hold. There exists  $q_T \in F$ ,  $q_T \neq 0$  such that  $\mathcal{B}^* e^{-(T-t)\mathcal{A}^*} q_T = 0$ . By definition, for any control  $v$ , we have

$$\langle y(T), q_T \rangle_{F', F} - \langle y_0, e^{-T\mathcal{A}} q_T \rangle_E = \int_0^T \langle v(s), \mathcal{B}^* e^{-(T-s)\mathcal{A}^*} q_T \rangle_U ds = 0, \quad (\text{III.5})$$

and it follows that

$$\langle y(T) - e^{-T\mathcal{A}} y_0, q_T \rangle_{F', F} = 0,$$

which proves that the reachable space at time  $T$  cannot be dense in  $F'$ . Indeed, if  $z \in F'$  is any element such that  $\langle z, q_T \rangle_{F', F} \neq 0$ , then  $e^{-T\mathcal{A}} y_0 + \varepsilon z$  is not reachable for any  $\varepsilon > 0$ .

- Assume that the approximate controllability does not hold in  $F'$ . By the Hahn-Banach theorem, it means that there exists a  $y_T \in F'$  and a  $q_T \in F \setminus \{0\}$  such that

$$\langle y_T, q_T \rangle_{F', F} \geq \langle y(T), q_T \rangle_{F', F},$$

for any control  $v \in L^2(0, T, U)$ .

From (III.5) we deduce that, for any  $v \in L^2(0, T, U)$

$$\int_0^T \langle v(s), \mathcal{B}^* e^{-(T-s)\mathcal{A}^*} q_T \rangle_U ds \leq \langle y_T - e^{-T\mathcal{A}} y_0, q_T \rangle_{F', F}.$$

We apply this inequality to  $v = \frac{1}{\delta} \mathcal{B}^* e^{-(T-s)\mathcal{A}^*} q_T$ , with  $\delta > 0$ , which gives

$$\frac{1}{\delta} \int_0^T \|\mathcal{B}^* e^{-(T-s)\mathcal{A}^*} q_T\|_U^2 ds \leq \langle y_T - e^{-T\mathcal{A}} y_0, q_T \rangle_{F', F}.$$

Letting  $\delta$  going to 0 leads to

$$\int_0^T \|\mathcal{B}^* e^{-(T-s)\mathcal{A}^*} q_T\|_U^2 ds = 0$$

and since  $q_T \neq 0$ , we obtained that the unique continuation property does not hold for the adjoint problem. ■

### Theorem III.3.4 (Null controllability and Observability)

*Our system (III.1) is null-controllable in  $E$  at time  $T > 0$  if and only if the adjoint system (III.2) satisfies the following observability property with respect to the observation operator  $\mathcal{B}^*$ , namely :*

*There exists a  $C > 0$  such that for any solution  $q$  of (III.2) with  $q(T) \in F$ , we have*

$$\|q(0)\|_E^2 \leq C^2 \int_0^T \|\mathcal{B}^* q(t)\|_U^2 dt.$$

With the semi-group notation, the observability inequality writes

$$\|e^{-T\mathcal{A}^*} q_T\|_E^2 \leq C^2 \int_0^T \|\mathcal{B}^* e^{-(T-t)\mathcal{A}^*} q_T\|_U^2 dt, \quad \forall q_T \in F.$$

### Remark III.3.5

If we are interested in the null-controllability with initial data in  $F'$ , then the above inequalities should hold with  $\|q(0)\|_{F'}^2$  in the left-hand side.

### Proof :

This result is a straightforward consequence of the following general result in functional analysis (which is itself a consequence of the closed graph theorem).

### Lemma III.3.6 (see Proposition 12.1.2 in [TW09])

Let  $H_1, H_2, H_3$  be three Hilbert spaces and  $F : H_1 \rightarrow H_3, G : H_2 \rightarrow H_3$  be two bounded linear operators. Then the following properties are equivalent

1. The range of  $F$  is included in the range of  $G$ .
2. There exists a  $C > 0$  such that the following inequalities hold

$$\|F^* x\|_{H_1} \leq C \|G^* x\|_{H_2}, \quad \forall x \in H_3.$$

If those properties are true, there exists a bounded linear operator  $L : H_1 \rightarrow H_2$  such that

$$F = G \circ L, \text{ and } \|L\|_{H_1 \rightarrow H_2} \leq C.$$

To prove the theorem, we apply the previous lemma with  $H_2 = L^2(0, T; U), H_1 = H_3 = E$ , and

$$F : y_0 \in E \mapsto e^{-TA} y_0 \in E,$$

$$G : v \in L^2(0, T, U) \mapsto \int_0^T e^{-(T-s)A} B v(s) ds \in E,$$

(this integral being well-defined by duality as seen before). ■

There is no natural (and easy to manage) generalization of the Kalman rank criterion in the infinite dimension case. However, the Fattorini-Hautus test still holds under quite general assumptions but it will of course only gives an approximate controllability result .

### Theorem III.3.7 (Fattorini-Hautus test)

Assume that:

- $\mathcal{A}^*$  has a compact resolvent and a complete system of root vectors.
- $\mathcal{B}^*$  is a bounded operator from  $D(\mathcal{A}^*)$  (with the graph norm) into  $U$ .

We also assume that the semi-group generated by  $-\mathcal{A}^*$  is analytic, even though the result can be adapted if it is not the case.

Then, our system (III.1) is approximately controllable at time  $T > 0$  if and only if we have

$$(\text{Ker } \mathcal{B}^*) \cap \text{Ker } (\mathcal{A}^* - \lambda I) = \{0\}, \quad \forall \lambda \in \mathbb{C}.$$

In particular, the approximate controllability property does not depend on  $T$ .

For a proof of this result in the framework above which is more general than the original one by Fattorini, we refer to [Oli14].





## Chapter IV

# The heat equation

In this chapter we are interested in the controllability properties of a parabolic scalar equation of the heat type in a bounded domain. We will actually be a little bit more general by looking at the following equation.

Let  $\Omega$  be a bounded connected smooth domain of  $\mathbb{R}^d$ . Let  $\gamma \in C^0(\overline{\Omega}, \mathbb{R})$  be a diffusion coefficient such that  $\gamma_{\min} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \inf_{\Omega} \gamma > 0$  and  $\alpha \in C^0(\overline{\Omega}, \mathbb{R})$  a potential term. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be the differential operator defined by

$$(\mathcal{A}y)(x) = -\operatorname{div}(\gamma(x)\nabla y) + \alpha(x)y.$$

We shall consider the partial differential evolution equation given by

$$\partial_t y + \mathcal{A}y = 0, \quad \text{in } (0, T) \times \Omega. \quad (\text{IV.1})$$

If we look at  $\mathcal{A}$  as an unbounded operator in  $L^2(\Omega)$  with domain  $D(\mathcal{A}) = H^2(\Omega) \cap H_0^1(\Omega)$ , we know that  $\mathcal{A}$  is self-adjoint and with compact resolvent. As a consequence, we have a complete spectral theory for this operator:

- There exists sequences  $(\lambda_k)_{k \geq 1} \subset \mathbb{R}$  and  $(\phi_k)_{k \geq 1} \in D(\mathcal{A})$  such that:
  - For any  $k$ ,  $\lambda_{k+1} \geq \lambda_k$  and  $\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \lambda_k = +\infty$ .
  - For any  $k$ ,  $\phi_k$  is an eigenfunction of  $\mathcal{A}$  for the eigenvalue  $\lambda_k$

$$\mathcal{A}\phi_k = \lambda_k \phi_k.$$

- The sequence  $(\phi_k)_k$  is an Hilbert basis of  $L^2(\Omega)$ , which means that

$$\langle \phi_k, \phi_l \rangle_{L^2(\Omega)} = \delta_{kl}, \quad \forall k, l \geq 1,$$

and  $(\phi_k)_k$  is a total family in  $L^2(\Omega)$ . This implies that any function  $\psi \in L^2(\Omega)$  can be written

$$\psi = \sum_{k \geq 1} \langle \psi, \phi_k \rangle_{L^2} \phi_k,$$

the sum being convergent in  $L^2(\Omega)$ .

Moreover, if  $\psi \in H_0^1(\Omega)$ , the series above is also convergent (towards  $\psi$  of course) for the topology of  $H^1$  and, for some constants  $C_1, C_2 > 0$ , depending only on the coefficients  $\gamma$  and  $\alpha$  we have

$$C_1 \sum_{k \geq 1} (1 + \lambda_k) \langle \psi, \phi_k \rangle_{L^2}^2 \leq \|\psi\|_{H^1}^2 \leq C_2 \sum_{k \geq 1} (1 + \lambda_k) \langle \psi, \phi_k \rangle_{L^2}^2.$$

- The semi-group associated with  $\mathcal{A}$  can be explicitly computed by

$$e^{-t\mathcal{A}}\psi = \sum_{k \geq 1} e^{-t\lambda_k} \langle \psi, \phi_k \rangle_{L^2} \phi_k, \quad \forall \psi \in L^2(\Omega).$$

Notice in particular the following energy estimate

$$\|e^{-t\mathcal{A}}\psi\|_{L^2(\Omega)} \leq e^{-t\lambda_1} \|\psi\|_{L^2(\Omega)}, \quad \forall \psi \in E, \forall t \geq 0. \quad (\text{IV.2})$$

In particular, if  $\lambda_1 > 0$ , we see that the system is dissipative.

- We shall need to use the following spaces

$$E_\mu \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Vect}(\phi_k, \lambda_k \leq \mu). \quad (\text{IV.3})$$

Let  $P_\mu$  be the orthogonal projection in  $L^2$  onto  $E_\mu$  defined by

$$P_\mu z = \sum_{k|\lambda_k \leq \mu} \langle z, \phi_k \rangle_{L^2(\Omega)} \phi_k.$$

We can prove the following additional dissipation property

$$\|e^{-t\mathcal{A}}\psi\|_{L^2(\Omega)} \leq e^{-t\mu} \|\psi\|_{L^2(\Omega)}, \quad \forall \psi \in E, \text{ s.t. } P_\mu z = 0, \quad \forall t \geq 0. \quad (\text{IV.4})$$

We will see in the sequel that other qualitative properties for the spectrum of the operator will be needed to analyze the controllability of the system.

We will analyze two types of controls:

- The distributed control problem: Let  $\omega$  be a non empty open subset of  $\Omega$ . We look for a control  $v \in L^2(]0, T[ \times \omega) = L^2(0, T; U)$  with  $U = L^2(\omega)$  such that the solution  $y \in \mathcal{C}^0([0, T], E)$ , with  $E = L^2(\Omega)$ , of the problem

$$\begin{cases} \partial_t y + \mathcal{A}y = \mathbf{1}_\omega v, & \text{in } \Omega, \\ y = 0, & \text{on } \partial\Omega, \\ y(0) = y_0 \end{cases} \quad (\text{IV.5})$$

satisfies either  $\|y(T) - y_T\|_E \leq \varepsilon$  (approximate controllability) or  $y(T) = 0$  (null-controllability).

- The boundary control problem: Let  $\Gamma_0$  be a non empty open subset of  $\Gamma$ . We look for a control  $v \in L^2(]0, T[ \times \Gamma_0) = L^2(0, T; U)$  with  $U = L^2(\Gamma_0)$  such that the solution  $y \in \mathcal{C}^0([0, T], E)$ , with  $E = H^{-1}(\Omega)$ , of the problem

$$\begin{cases} \partial_t y + \mathcal{A}y = 0, & \text{in } \Omega, \\ y = \mathbf{1}_{\Gamma_0} v, & \text{on } \partial\Omega, \\ y(0) = y_0 \end{cases} \quad (\text{IV.6})$$

satisfies either  $\|y(T) - y_T\|_E \leq \varepsilon$  (approximate controllability) or  $y(T) = 0$  (null-controllability).

### Remark IV.0.1

*From the point of view of controllability we can always assume, if necessary, that the potential  $\alpha$  is non negative, which implies in particular that  $\lambda_1 > 0$  and thus all the eigenvalues are positive.*

*Indeed, if one sets  $\tilde{y} = e^{-at}y$  we see that  $\tilde{y}$  solves the problem*

$$\begin{cases} \partial_t \tilde{y} + (\mathcal{A} + a)\tilde{y} = \mathbf{1}_\omega e^{-at}v, & \text{in } \Omega, \\ \tilde{y} = 0, & \text{on } \partial\Omega, \\ \tilde{y}(0) = y_0, \end{cases}$$

*which amounts at adding the constant  $a$  to  $\alpha$ .*

## 1 Further spectral properties and applications

In view of the study of the problems above, we have seen that we shall need to study carefully the behavior of the sequences of eigenvalues  $(\lambda_k)_k$  as well as the quantities  $\|\mathcal{B}^* \phi_k\|_U$  that will play a determinant role in the analysis.

## 1.1 The 1D case

We assume in this section that  $\Omega = (0, 1)$ .

### 1.1.1 Spectral properties in the continuous setting

We shall first analyse the 1D case, since it is much easier than the general 2D case. We refer to the article [ABM16] for the detailed analysis.

#### Proposition IV.1.2

*Under the assumptions above, for both boundary and distributed control problems, we have*

$$\mathcal{B}^* \phi_k \neq 0, \quad \forall k \geq 1.$$

*In particular, the heat equation is approximately controllable at any time  $T > 0$  in both cases : boundary and distributed controls by using the Fattorini-Hautus test.*

#### Proof :

In both cases, if we assume that  $\mathcal{B}^* \phi_k = 0$ , it implies that there exists a point  $a \in [0, 1]$  such that  $\phi_k(a) = \phi_k'(a) = 0$ . Indeed, we either take  $a$  to be a boundary point of  $\Omega$ , or a point inside the control domain  $\omega$ .

Since  $\phi_k$  satisfies a second order linear homogeneous differential equation, this would imply  $\phi_k \equiv 0$  which is impossible. ■

#### Theorem IV.1.3

*Under the assumptions above, there exists  $C_1 > 0$  and  $C_2(\omega) > 0$  such that*

$$\|\phi_k\|_{L^2(\omega)}^2 \geq C_2(\omega), \quad \forall k \geq 1,$$

$$|\partial_{\bullet} \phi_k| \geq C_1 \sqrt{\lambda_k}, \quad \forall k \geq 1, \forall \bullet \in \{l, r\},$$

$$\lambda_k \geq C_1 k^2, \quad \forall k \geq 1 \text{ large enough,}$$

$$|\lambda_{k+1} - \lambda_k| \geq C_1 \sqrt{\lambda_k}, \quad \forall k \geq 1.$$

#### Remark IV.1.4 (Laplace operator)

*For the standard Laplace operator  $\gamma = 1$ ,  $\alpha = 0$ , the eigenfunctions and eigenvalues are explicitly given by*

$$\phi_k(x) = \sqrt{2} \sin(k\pi x), \quad \lambda_k = k^2 \pi^2.$$

*The properties proved in the above theorem are thus straightforward in this case. Moreover, there are clearly optimal.*

We begin with the following lemma.

**Lemma IV.1.5**

Let  $\omega$  be a non-empty open subset of  $\Omega$ . There exists  $C_1(\alpha, \gamma) > 0$  and  $C_2(\alpha, \gamma, \omega) > 0$  such that we have, for any  $k \geq 1$ ,

$$\frac{1}{\lambda_k} |\partial_{\bullet} \phi_k|^2 \geq C_1 \mathcal{R}_k, \quad \forall \bullet \in \{l, r\},$$

and

$$\|\phi_k\|_{L^2(\omega)}^2 \geq C_2 \mathcal{R}_k,$$

where we have defined

$$\mathcal{R}_k := \inf_{x, y \in \Omega} \frac{|\phi_k(x)|^2 + \frac{\gamma(x)}{\lambda_k} |\phi_k'(x)|^2}{|\phi_k(y)|^2 + \frac{\gamma(y)}{\lambda_k} |\phi_k'(y)|^2}. \quad (\text{IV.7})$$

**Proof :**

- By definition of  $\mathcal{R}_k$ , and the fact that  $\phi_k(0) = 0$ , we have

$$\frac{\gamma(0)}{\lambda_k} |\phi_k'(0)|^2 \geq \mathcal{R}_k \left( |\phi_k(y)|^2 + \frac{\gamma(y)}{\lambda_k} |\phi_k'(y)|^2 \right), \quad \forall y \in \Omega.$$

By integration over  $y \in \Omega$ , we can use the normalisation condition and the equation satisfied by  $\phi_k$  to find that

$$\frac{\gamma(0)}{\lambda_k} |\phi_k'(0)|^2 \geq \mathcal{R}_k \left( 2 - \frac{1}{\lambda_k} \int_{\Omega} \alpha \phi_k^2 dx \right).$$

For  $k$  large enough, we deduce that

$$\frac{\gamma(0)}{\lambda_k} |\phi_k'(0)|^2 \geq \mathcal{R}_k,$$

which gives the claim.

- Let  $(a, b) \subset \omega$  be a connected component of  $\omega$ . The Sturm oscillation theorem says that for  $k$  large enough, we can find two zeros  $a_k < b_k$  of  $\phi_k$  such that  $(a_k, b_k) \subset (a, b)$  and  $b_k - a_k \geq (b - a)/2$ . We can thus multiply by  $\phi_k$  the equation satisfied by  $\phi_k$  and integrate by parts the result over  $(a_k, b_k)$  to obtain

$$\int_{a_k}^{b_k} \gamma |\phi_k'|^2 + \alpha |\phi_k|^2 = \lambda_k \int_{a_k}^{b_k} |\phi_k|^2,$$

and since we have assumed that  $\alpha \geq 0$ , we find that

$$\int_{a_k}^{b_k} |\phi_k|^2 \geq \int_{a_k}^{b_k} \frac{\gamma}{\lambda_k} |\phi_k'|^2.$$

We can integrate over  $x \in (a_k, b_k)$  the definition of  $\mathcal{R}_k$  to get

$$\begin{aligned} 2 \int_{a_k}^{b_k} |\phi_k|^2 &\geq \int_{a_k}^{b_k} |\phi_k|^2 + \int_{a_k}^{b_k} \frac{\gamma}{\lambda_k} |\phi_k'|^2 \\ &\geq (b_k - a_k) \left( |\phi_k(y)|^2 + \frac{\gamma(y)}{\lambda_k} |\phi_k'(y)|^2 \right). \end{aligned}$$

Integrating once more with respect to  $y \in (0, 1)$  leads to

$$\int_{a_k}^{b_k} |\phi_k|^2 \geq \frac{b - a}{4} \left( 2 - \frac{1}{\lambda_k} \int_{\Omega} \alpha \phi_k^2 dx \right),$$

so that, for  $k$  large enough, we have

$$\int_{\omega} |\phi_k|^2 \geq \int_{a_k}^{b_k} |\phi_k|^2 \geq \frac{b - a}{4}.$$

Now we propose a reformulation of the differential equation that will permit us to prove uniform lower bounds for the quantity  $\mathcal{R}_k$ . ■

**Lemma IV.1.6**

Let  $f : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a continuous function and  $\lambda > 0$ . Suppose that  $u : \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  satisfies the second-order differential equation (without any assumption on boundary conditions)

$$\mathcal{A}u(x) = \lambda u(x) + f(x), \quad \forall x \in \Omega, \quad (\text{IV.8})$$

then the following equation holds

$$U'(x) = M(x)U(x) + Q(x)U(x) + F(x), \quad (\text{IV.9})$$

where we have defined the vectors

$$U(x) := \begin{pmatrix} u(x) \\ \sqrt{\frac{\gamma(x)}{\lambda}} u'(x) \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad F(x) := \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -\frac{f(x)}{\sqrt{\gamma(x)\lambda}} \end{pmatrix}.$$

and the matrices

$$M(x) := \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \sqrt{\frac{\lambda}{\gamma(x)}} \\ -\sqrt{\frac{\lambda}{\gamma(x)}} & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad Q(x) := \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ \frac{\alpha(x)}{\sqrt{\lambda\gamma(x)}} & \sqrt{\gamma(x)} \left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{\gamma}}\right)'(x) \end{pmatrix}.$$

The key-point of this formulation is that the large terms in  $\sqrt{\lambda}$  only appear in the skew-symmetric matrix  $M(x)$ , while the matrix  $Q(x)$  only contain bounded terms with respect to  $\lambda$ .

As a consequence of this particular structure, we can obtain the following estimates.

**Lemma IV.1.7**

With the same notations as in Lemma IV.1.6, and assuming that  $\lambda \geq 1$ , there exists  $C := C(\gamma, \alpha)$ , independent of  $\lambda$ , such that for any  $x, y \in \Omega$ , we have

$$\|U(y)\| \leq C \left( \|U(x)\| + \left| \int_x^y \|F(s)\| ds \right| \right). \quad (\text{IV.10})$$

**Proof :**

Let  $x, y \in \Omega$ . Without loss of generality we assume  $y > x$ . It is fundamental to notice that the matrices  $(M_k(s))_s$  pairwise commute, so that the resolvent operator associated with  $x \mapsto M(x)$  simply reads

$$S(y, x) := \exp \left( \int_x^y M(s) ds \right).$$

We can then use Duhamel's formula to deduce from the equation (IV.9) the following expression

$$U(y) = S(y, x)U(x) + \int_x^y S(y, s) (Q(s)U(s) + F(s)) ds. \quad (\text{IV.11})$$

We use now the fact that the matrix  $M(s)$  is skew symmetric for any  $s$ , and so is  $\int_x^y M(s) ds$ . It follows that the resolvent  $S(y, s)$  is unitary  $\|S(y, s)\| = 1$  for any  $y, s$ . We get

$$\|U(y)\| \leq \|U(x)\| + \left| \int_x^y \|F(s)\| ds \right| + \left| \int_x^y \|Q(s)\| \|U(s)\| ds \right|.$$

Gronwall's lemma finally yields

$$\|U(y)\| \leq \left( \|U(x)\| + \left| \int_x^y \|F(s)\| ds \right| \right) \exp \left( \left| \int_x^y \|Q(s)\| ds \right| \right),$$

which gives the result since  $Q(s)$  is bounded uniformly in  $s$  and  $\lambda$ , by using the assumptions on the coefficient  $\gamma$  and  $\alpha$  ■

We can now prove the main Theorem of this section.

**Proof (of Theorem IV.1.3):**

A first remark is that it is enough to prove the claims for  $k$  large enough and in particular we can assume without loss of generality that  $\lambda_k \geq 1$ .

- We begin with the proof of points 2. and 3. of the theorem, that is the properties of the eigenfunctions  $\phi_k$ . By definition,  $\phi_k$  is solution of the equation

$$\mathcal{A}\phi_k = \lambda_k\phi_k,$$

which is exactly (IV.8) with  $u = \phi_k$ ,  $\lambda = \lambda_k$ ,  $f = 0$ . From Lemma IV.1.7 we deduce that there exists  $C := C(\gamma, \alpha)$ , independent of  $k$ , such that for any  $x, y \in \bar{\Omega}$ ,

$$|\phi_k(y)|^2 + \frac{\gamma(y)}{\lambda_k} |\phi'_k(y)|^2 \geq C \left( |\phi_k(x)|^2 + \frac{\gamma(x)}{\lambda_k} |\phi'_k(x)|^2 \right), \quad (\text{IV.12})$$

which exactly proves that the quantity  $\mathcal{R}_k$  defined in (IV.7) is uniformly bounded from below. The claim thus immediately follows from Lemma IV.1.5.

- We shall now prove the first point in Theorem IV.1.3. For any two indices  $k_1 > k_2$  with  $\lambda_{k_2} \geq 1$ , we define

$$u(x) := \phi'_{k_2}(1)\phi_{k_1}(x) - \phi'_{k_1}(1)\phi_{k_2}(x),$$

in such a way that  $u(1) = u'(1) = 0$  and

$$\mathcal{A}u = \lambda_{k_1}u + f,$$

with

$$f(x) := \phi'_{k_1}(1)\phi_{k_2}(x) (\lambda_{k_1} - \lambda_{k_2}).$$

Using the notations introduced in Lemma IV.1.6, we observe that by construction we have  $U(1) = 0$  so that the estimate (IV.10) specialized in  $x = 1$  leads to

$$\|U(y)\| \leq C \int_y^1 \|F(s)\| ds \leq C \int_0^1 \|F(s)\| ds, \quad \forall y \in \Omega.$$

Using the expression for  $F$  and  $f$ , we find that

$$\|U(y)\| \leq \frac{C}{\sqrt{\gamma_{\min}}} \left( \frac{\lambda_{k_1} - \lambda_{k_2}}{\sqrt{\lambda_{k_1}}} |\phi'_{k_1}(1)| \right) \int_0^1 |\phi_{k_2}(s)| ds, \quad \forall y \in \Omega.$$

Thanks to the normalisation condition  $\|\phi_{k_2}\|_{L^2(\Omega)} = 1$  and the expressions of  $U$  and  $u$ , we obtain for any  $y \in \Omega$ ,

$$|\phi'_{k_2}(1)\phi_{k_1}(y) - \phi'_{k_1}(1)\phi_{k_2}(y)|^2 \leq \frac{C}{\gamma_{\min}} \left( \frac{\lambda_{k_1} - \lambda_{k_2}}{\sqrt{\lambda_{k_1}}} |\phi'_{k_1}(1)| \right)^2.$$

We integrate this inequality with respect to  $y \in (0, 1)$  and we use the  $L^2(\Omega)$  orthonormality of  $\phi_{k_1}$  and  $\phi_{k_2}$  to finally get

$$|\phi'_{k_1}(1)|^2 \leq (\phi'_{k_1}(1))^2 + (\phi'_{k_2}(1))^2 \leq \frac{C}{\gamma_{\min}} \left( \frac{\lambda_{k_1} - \lambda_{k_2}}{\sqrt{\lambda_{k_1}}} |\phi'_{k_1}(1)| \right)^2,$$

and since  $\phi'_{k_1}(1) \neq 0$ , we conclude that

$$\lambda_{k_1} - \lambda_{k_2} \geq \bar{C} \sqrt{\lambda_{k_1}},$$

for some  $\bar{C} > 0$  independent of  $k_1$  and  $k_2$ . ■

### 1.1.2 Applications to the controllability

**Approximate controllability.** The results obtained in Theorem IV.1.3 and the Fattorini-Hautus test (Theorem III.3.7) immediately shows that our parabolic equation is approximately controllable at any time  $T > 0$  both in the distributed and boundary control cases.

**Null-controllability.** We may now prove the null-controllability of our problem by using the moments method. We already encountered this method in Section 4. The main difference here is that we are no more in a finite dimension setting and there is a countable infinite number of frequencies in the system. In this context, this strategy were for instance used in [FR71, FR75].

That is the reason why we will need to be able to prove the existence of a countable biorthogonal family functions to the set of all exponentials in the solution. Moreover, we shall need precise estimate on those families.

The theorem we need is the following (its proof is postponed to Section 1.2).

#### Theorem IV.1.8 (Biorthogonal families of exponential functions)

Let  $(\sigma_k)_k$  be an increasing sequence of distinct positive numbers. We assume that, for some  $\rho > 0$  and some  $\mathcal{N} : (0, +\infty) \rightarrow (0, +\infty)$ , we have

$$\sum_{k \geq \mathcal{N}(\varepsilon)} \frac{1}{\sigma_k} \leq \varepsilon, \quad \forall \varepsilon > 0,$$

$$|\sigma_{k+1} - \sigma_k| \geq \rho, \quad \forall k \geq 1.$$

Then, for any  $T > 0$ , there exists a sequence of functions  $(q_k)_k \subset L^2(0, T)$  such that

$$\int_0^T q_k(s) e^{-(T-s)\sigma_l} ds = \delta_{kl},$$

and satisfying

$$\|q_k\|_{L^2(0, T)} \leq K_{\varepsilon, T, \mathcal{N}, \rho} e^{\varepsilon \sigma_k}, \quad \forall \varepsilon > 0, \forall k \geq 1,$$

where  $K_{\varepsilon, T, \mathcal{N}, \rho}$  only depends on  $T, \varepsilon, \rho, \mathcal{N}$  but not on the whole sequence  $(\sigma_k)_k$ .

#### Remark IV.1.9

The condition on the convergence of the series  $\sum_k \frac{1}{\sigma_k}$  is mandatory to prove the existence of a biorthogonal family. Indeed, the celebrated Muntz theorem (the proof of which is included in our proof of the present result), says that if the series is divergent then, the family  $(t \mapsto e^{-(T-s)\sigma_l})_l$  is dense in  $L^2(0, T)$ . In particular, for any  $k$ , the family  $(t \mapsto e^{-(T-s)\sigma_l})_{l \neq k}$  is also dense in  $L^2(0, T)$  and any function  $q$  which is orthogonal to each of those functions should necessarily vanish identically and cannot satisfy the other condition  $\int_0^T q(s) e^{-(T-s)\sigma_k} ds = 1$ .

**Remark IV.1.10 (Extension)**

In the presence of Jordan blocks, we can extend the previous result as follows. Let  $\eta \geq 0$ . With the same assumptions as in the Theorem, we can find functions  $(q_{k,j})_{k \geq 0, 0 \leq j \leq \eta} \subset L^2(0, T)$  such that

$$\int_0^T q_{k,j}(s)(T-s)^i e^{-(T-s)\sigma_l} ds = \delta_{k,l} \delta_{i,j}, \quad \forall k, l \geq 0, \quad \forall i, j \in \{0, \dots, \eta\},$$

and

$$\|q_{k,j}\|_{L^2(0,T)} \leq K_{\varepsilon,T,\mathcal{N},\eta,\rho} e^{\varepsilon\sigma_k}, \quad \forall \varepsilon > 0, \quad \forall k \geq 1, \quad \forall j \in \{0, \dots, \eta\}.$$

**Theorem IV.1.11 (Boundary null-controllability in 1D)**

Assume that  $d = 1$ ,  $\Omega = (0, 1)$ . Let  $\Gamma_0 = \{1\}$  for instance. For any  $y_0 \in L^2(\Omega)$ , and  $T > 0$ , there exists a control  $v \in L^2(0, T)$  such that the solution of (IV.6) satisfies  $y(T) = 0$ .

**Proof :**

Let  $T > 0$  be given. For any  $v \in L^2(0, T)$ , the solution  $y$  satisfies

$$\langle y(T), \phi_k \rangle_{H^{-1}, H_0^1} - \langle y_0, e^{-\lambda_k T} \phi_k \rangle_{H^{-1}, H_0^1} = \int_0^T v(t) e^{-(T-t)\lambda_k} \partial_r \phi_k dt, \quad \forall k \geq 1.$$

Hence,  $v$  is a null-control for our system if and only if we have

$$-\langle y_0, e^{-\lambda_k T} \phi_k \rangle_{L^2} = \int_0^T v(t) e^{-(T-t)\lambda_k} \partial_r \phi_k dt, \quad \forall k \geq 1,$$

where we used here that  $y_0 \in L^2(\Omega)$ . We are thus led to find a function  $v \in L^2(0, T)$  that satisfies the following moment problem

$$\int_0^T v(t) e^{-(T-t)\lambda_k} dt = \frac{-\langle y_0, e^{-\lambda_k T} \phi_k \rangle_{L^2}}{\partial_r \phi_k}.$$

From the properties of the eigenvalues  $(\lambda_k)_k$  given in Theorem IV.1.3 and Theorem IV.1.8, we know that there exists a biorthogonal family  $(q_k)_k$  to the exponentials made upon the  $\lambda_k$ . It follows that, as we did in the finite dimensional setting, we may **formally** solve the moment problem above by defining

$$v(t) = \sum_{k \geq 1} v_k(t), \quad \text{with } v_k(t) = \frac{-\langle y_0, e^{-\lambda_k T} \phi_k \rangle_{L^2}}{\partial_r \phi_k} q_k(t).$$

Indeed, if this series makes sense (and if the following computation can be justified) we have

$$\int_0^T v(t) e^{-(T-t)\lambda_l} dt = \sum_{k \geq 1} \frac{-\langle y_0, e^{-\lambda_k T} \phi_k \rangle_{L^2}}{\partial_r \phi_k} \int_0^T q_k(t) e^{-\lambda_l(T-t)} dt = \frac{-\langle y_0, e^{-\lambda_l T} \phi_l \rangle_{L^2}}{\partial_r \phi_l},$$

and the claim will be proved. It remains to show the convergence of the series. To this end, we will show that it is absolutely convergent. Indeed we have

$$\|v_k\|_{L^2(0,T)} \leq \frac{\|y_0\|_{L^2} e^{-\lambda_k T}}{|\partial_r \phi_k|} \|q_k\|_{L^2(0,T)},$$



and by the estimate of Theorem IV.1.8 with  $\varepsilon = T/2$ , we deduce that

$$\begin{aligned} \|v_k\|_{L^2(0,T)} &\leq \frac{\|y_0\|_{L^2} e^{-\lambda_k T}}{|\partial_r \phi_k|} \|q_k\|_{L^2(0,T)} \\ &\leq K_{T,\Lambda} \frac{\|y_0\|_{L^2}}{|\partial_r \phi_k|} e^{-\lambda_k T} e^{\lambda_k T/2} \\ &\leq C_{T,\Lambda,y_0} \frac{1}{|\partial_r \phi_k|} e^{-\lambda_k T/2}. \end{aligned}$$

Finally, we use the bound from below for  $|\partial_r \phi_k|$  given in Theorem IV.1.3, to deduce that

$$\|v_k\|_{L^2(0,T)} \leq C \frac{e^{-\lambda_k T/2}}{\sqrt{\lambda_k}},$$

which proves that  $\sum_k \|v_k\|_{L^2(0,T)} < +\infty$  and concludes the proof.  $\blacksquare$

Let us try the same kind of proof in the case of the distributed control problem.

#### Theorem IV.1.12 (Distributed null-controllability in 1D)

Assume that  $d = 1$ ,  $\Omega = (0, 1)$ . Let  $\omega$  be any non empty open subset of  $\Omega$ . For any  $y_0 \in L^2(\Omega)$ , and  $T > 0$ , there exists a control  $v \in L^2((0, T) \times \omega)$  such that the solution of (IV.5) satisfies  $y(T) = 0$ .

#### Proof :

We start with the same formulation as before, for any function  $v \in L^2((0, T) \times \omega)$

$$\langle y(T), \phi_k \rangle_{L^2} - \langle y_0, e^{-\lambda_k T} \phi_k \rangle_{L^2} = \int_0^T \int_{\omega} v(t, x) e^{-(T-t)\lambda_k} \phi_k(x) dt, dx \quad \forall k \geq 1.$$

The solution vanishes at time  $T$ , if and only if  $v$  satisfies the following space-time moment problem

$$\int_0^T \int_{\omega} v(t, x) e^{-(T-t)\lambda_k} \phi_k(x) dt, dx = -\langle y_0, e^{-\lambda_k T} \phi_k \rangle_{L^2}, \quad \forall k \geq 1.$$

To solve this problem, we look for a biorthogonal family  $(\tilde{q}_k)_k$  in  $L^2((0, T) \times \omega)$  for the functions  $(t, x) \in (0, T) \times \omega \mapsto \phi_k(x) e^{-\lambda_k(T-t)}$ . We propose the following family

$$\tilde{q}_k(t, x) = \frac{\phi_k}{\|\phi_k\|_{L^2(\omega)}^2} q_k(t),$$

and we indeed check, by the Fubini theorem, that

$$\int_0^T \int_{\omega} \tilde{q}_k(t, x) \phi_l(x) e^{-\lambda_l(T-t)} dt = \frac{1}{\|\phi_k\|_{L^2(\omega)}^2} \left( \int_{\omega} \phi_k \phi_l dx \right) \left( \int_0^T q_k(t) e^{-\lambda_l(T-t)} dt \right) = \delta_{kl}.$$

Finally, we can define a formal null-control  $v$  by the series

$$v = \sum_{k \geq 1} v_k, \quad \text{with } v_k(t, x) = -\langle y_0, e^{-\lambda_k T} \phi_k \rangle_{L^2} \tilde{q}_k(t, x).$$

It remains to check the convergence of this series by computing

$$\|v_k\|_{L^2((0,T) \times \omega)}^2 \leq \|y_0\|_{L^2}^2 e^{-2\lambda_k T} \frac{\|q_k\|_{L^2(0,T)}^2}{\|\phi_k\|_{L^2(\omega)}^2},$$

so that

$$\|v_k\|_{L^2((0,T) \times \omega)} \leq K_{y_0, T, \Lambda} \frac{1}{\|\phi_k\|_{L^2(\omega)}} e^{-\lambda_k T/2}.$$

Using the bound from below for  $\|\phi_k\|_{L^2(\omega)}$  in Theorem IV.1.3 we conclude to the convergence in  $L^2$  of the series that defines  $v$  and the claim is proved.  $\blacksquare$

## 1.2 Proof of the biorthogonal family bounds

Our goal is to prove Theorem IV.1.8, which is very much related to the Muntz theorem. The proof below is taken from [FCGBdT10].

- First of all, we will work on the time interval  $(0, +\infty)$ . We define the following functions in  $L^2(0, +\infty)$  (its inner product is denoted by  $(\cdot, \cdot)$ )

$$p_k(t) := e^{-\sigma_k t},$$

in such a way that

$$(p_k, p_l) = \frac{1}{\sigma_k + \sigma_l}.$$

For any  $m$  and  $n \geq m$  we introduce the closed subspaces defined by

$$E_n^m := \text{Span}(p_k, 1 \leq k \leq n, k \neq m),$$

and

$$E^m := \overline{\text{Span}(p_k, k \geq 1, k \neq m)}.$$

We want to compute the distance  $D_m$  of  $p_m$  to the space  $E^m$ . It is easily shown that

$$D_m = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} d(p_m, E_n^m).$$

Let

$$P_{E_n^m} p_m := \sum_{\substack{k=1 \\ k \neq m}}^n a_{k,n}^m p_k.$$

By using that  $(P_{E_n^m} p_m - p_m, p_l) = 0$  for any  $l \neq m$ , we obtain the equations

$$0 = \frac{1}{\sigma_m + \sigma_l} - \sum_{\substack{k=1 \\ k \neq m}}^n \frac{a_{k,n}^m}{\sigma_k + \sigma_l}.$$

This can be written as follows, for any  $l \neq m$ ,

$$0 = \prod_{\substack{p=1 \\ p \neq m}}^n (\sigma_p + \sigma_l) - \sum_{\substack{k=1 \\ k \neq m}}^n a_{k,n}^m \prod_{\substack{p=1 \\ p \neq k}}^n (\sigma_p + \sigma_l).$$

We introduce the polynomial function  $g$  (of degree  $n - 1$ ) defined by

$$g(X) = \prod_{\substack{p=1 \\ p \neq m}}^n (\sigma_p + X) - \sum_{\substack{k=1 \\ k \neq m}}^n a_{k,n}^m \prod_{\substack{p=1 \\ p \neq k}}^n (\sigma_p + X),$$

so that the previous equations reads

$$g(\sigma_l) = 0, \quad \forall l \neq m.$$

It follows that for some constant  $K_m$  we have

$$g(X) = K \prod_{\substack{k=1 \\ k \neq m}}^n (X - \sigma_k).$$

In order to determine the value of  $K$ , we compute  $g(-\sigma_m)$  with the two formulas

$$g(-\sigma_m) = K \prod_{\substack{k=1 \\ k \neq m}}^n (-\sigma_m - \sigma_k) = \prod_{\substack{p=1 \\ p \neq m}}^n (\sigma_p - \sigma_m),$$

so that

$$K = \prod_{\substack{k=1 \\ k \neq m}}^n \frac{\sigma_m - \sigma_k}{\sigma_m + \sigma_k},$$

and finally

$$g(X) = \prod_{\substack{k=1 \\ k \neq m}}^n \frac{(\sigma_m - \sigma_k)(X - \sigma_k)}{\sigma_m + \sigma_k}.$$

Finally, with similar computations as before, we obtain that

$$\begin{aligned} \|p_m - P_{E_n^m} p_m\|^2 &= (p_m - P_{E_n^m} p_m, p_m) \\ &= \frac{g(\sigma_m)}{\prod_{k=1}^n (\sigma_k + \sigma_m)} \\ &= \frac{1}{2\sigma_m} \prod_{\substack{k=1 \\ k \neq m}}^n \frac{(\sigma_m - \sigma_k)^2}{(\sigma_m + \sigma_k)^2} \end{aligned}$$

Taking the limit  $n \rightarrow \infty$  gives the infinite product formula

$$D_m = \frac{1}{2\sigma_m} \prod_{\substack{k=1 \\ k \neq m}}^{+\infty} \frac{(\sigma_m - \sigma_k)^2}{(\sigma_m + \sigma_k)^2}.$$

Note that the product is convergent (possibly towards 0) since all the elements are non-negative and smaller than 1. To be more precise we take the logarithm of the product

$$\log D_m = cte + \sum_{k \neq m} \log \left| \frac{1 - \frac{\sigma_m}{\sigma_k}}{1 + \frac{\sigma_m}{\sigma_k}} \right|,$$

and since

$$\log \left| \frac{1 - \frac{\sigma_m}{\sigma_k}}{1 + \frac{\sigma_m}{\sigma_k}} \right| \underset{k \rightarrow +\infty}{\sim} \frac{-2\sigma_m}{\sigma_k},$$

we obtain that

$$D_m = 0 \iff \sum_k \frac{1}{\sigma_k} = +\infty.$$

- In the case  $\sum_k \frac{1}{\sigma_k} = +\infty$ , we have that  $p_m \in E^m$  which implies that a biorthogonal family  $(q_k)_k$  cannot exist because if it was the case, we would have

$$q_m \perp E^m,$$

and thus  $q_m \perp p_m$  which is a contradiction with the condition  $(q_m, p_m) = 1$ .

- In the case  $\sum_k \frac{1}{\sigma_k} < +\infty$  (which is the case we consider here), we have  $D_m > 0$  for any  $m$  and thus  $p_m \notin E^m$ . We set

$$q_m := \frac{p_m - P_{E^m} p_m}{D_m^2}.$$

By construction, we have  $(q_m, p_l) = 0$  if  $l \neq m$  and

$$(q_m, p_m) = \frac{(p_m - P_{E^m} p_m, p_m)}{D_m^2} = \frac{(p_m - P_{E^m} p_m, p_m - P_{E^m} p_m)}{D_m^2} = 1.$$

The family  $(q_m)_m$  is thus a biorthogonal family of  $(p_m)_m$ . Moreover, we have

$$\|q_m\|_{L^2} = \frac{1}{D_m}.$$

We write

$$D_m = \frac{1}{2\sigma_m} \left( \frac{\Pi_m}{Q_m} \right)^2,$$

with

$$\Pi_m = \prod_{\substack{k=1 \\ k \neq m}}^{+\infty} \left| 1 - \frac{\sigma_m}{\sigma_k} \right|,$$

and

$$Q_m = \prod_{\substack{k=1 \\ k \neq m}}^{+\infty} \left( 1 + \frac{\sigma_m}{\sigma_k} \right).$$

In order to bound  $\|q_m\|_{L^2}$  we thus need a bound from below for  $D_m$ , that means a bound from below for  $\Pi_m$  and a bound from above for  $Q_m$ .

- Let us first deal with  $\Pi_m$  that we write

$$\Pi_m = \Pi_m^1 \times \Pi_m^2 \times \Pi_m^3,$$

where

$$\Pi_m^i = \prod_{k \in J_i} \left| 1 - \frac{\sigma_m}{\sigma_k} \right|,$$

with

$$J_1 = \{k \text{ s.t. } |\sigma_k| \leq \frac{1}{2}|\sigma_m|\},$$

$$J_2 = \{k \neq m \text{ s.t. } \frac{1}{2}|\sigma_m| < |\sigma_k| < 2|\sigma_m|\},$$

$$J_3 = \{k \text{ s.t. } |\sigma_k| > 2|\sigma_m|\}.$$

- \* Case  $i = 1$ : for any  $k \in J_1$ , we have

$$\left| 1 - \frac{\sigma_m}{\sigma_k} \right| = \frac{\sigma_m}{\sigma_k} - 1 \geq 1,$$

so that we have

$$\Pi_m^1 \geq 1.$$

\* Case  $i = 3$ : we use that  $e^{-2x} \leq 1 - x$  for any  $x \in [0, 1/2]$  to obtain

$$\forall k \in J_3, \quad \left| 1 - \frac{\sigma_m}{\sigma_k} \right| = 1 - \frac{\sigma_m}{\sigma_k} \geq e^{-2\sigma_m/\sigma_k}.$$

From this we deduce that

$$\Pi_m^3 \geq \exp \left( -2\sigma_m \sum_{k \in J_3} \frac{1}{\lambda_k} \right),$$

and by assumption, for any  $\varepsilon > 0$  there exists a  $m_0(\varepsilon)$  such that

$$\sum_{k \in J_3} \frac{1}{\lambda_k} \leq \varepsilon,$$

which gives

$$\Pi_m^3 \geq \exp(-2\varepsilon\sigma_m), \quad \forall m \geq m_0(\varepsilon),$$

whereas for  $m < m_0(\varepsilon)$  we have  $\sigma_m < \sigma_{m_0(\varepsilon)}$  and thus

$$\Pi_m^3 \geq \exp \left( -2\sigma_{m_0(\varepsilon)} \sum_{k \geq 1} \frac{1}{\lambda_k} \right),$$

which is a lower bound that only depends on  $\varepsilon$ .

\* Case  $i = 2$ : Notice that we don't yet used the gap condition on the sequence  $(\sigma_k)_k$ . It will be important now to obtain a lower bound of the term  $\Pi_m^2$  (which corresponds to the values of  $k$  where  $\sigma_k$  is close to  $\sigma_m$ ).

We use the fact that  $|\sigma_k - \sigma_m| \geq \rho|k - m|$  and that  $\sigma_k \leq 2\sigma_m$  for all  $k \in J_2$  to get

$$\Pi_m^2 \geq \prod_{k \in J_2} \left( \frac{|k - m|\rho}{2\sigma_m} \right) = r_m! s_m! \left( \frac{\rho}{2\sigma_m} \right)^{s_m + r_m},$$

where

$$r_m = \#\{J_2 \cap ]m, +\infty[ \},$$

$$s_m = \#\{J_2 \cap ]-\infty, m[ \}.$$

· We start by proving that

$$\lim_{m \rightarrow \infty} \frac{r_m}{\sigma_m} = \lim_{m \rightarrow \infty} \frac{s_m}{\sigma_m} = 0.$$

Indeed, by definition of  $J_2$ , we have

$$\frac{r_m + s_m}{\sigma_m} = \frac{\#J_2}{\sigma_m} = \sum_{k \in J_2} \frac{1}{\sigma_m} \leq \sum_{k \in J_2} \frac{2}{\sigma_k} \leq \sum_{\substack{\text{k.s.t.} \\ \sigma_k \geq \sigma_m/2}} \frac{2}{\sigma_k} \xrightarrow{m \rightarrow \infty} 0.$$

· Let us define a function  $\psi$  by the formula

$$\psi(s) := s \log \left( \frac{\rho}{2e} \right) + s \log(s).$$

For  $\varepsilon > 0$  given we choose  $\alpha_\varepsilon > 0$  such that

$$\psi(s) \geq -\varepsilon, \quad \forall s \in [0, \alpha_\varepsilon].$$

By using the previous point we can find a  $m_0(\varepsilon)$  such that

$$\frac{r_m}{\sigma_m} < \alpha_\varepsilon, \quad \forall m \geq m_0(\varepsilon).$$

We set

$$\Gamma_m := r_m! \left( \frac{\rho}{2\sigma_m} \right)^{r_m}.$$

By the weak Stirling property, we have, for some  $C > 0$ ,

$$\Gamma_m \geq C \left( \frac{r_m \rho}{2e\sigma_m} \right)^{r_m}.$$

If  $r_m = 0$ , we have  $\Gamma_m = 1$ . If  $r_m > 0$  and  $m \leq m_0(\varepsilon)$ , we have  $1 \leq r_m \leq m \leq m_0(\varepsilon)$  and  $\sigma_m \leq \sigma_{m_0(\varepsilon)}$  so that we can obtain

$$\Gamma_m \geq C_\varepsilon.$$

Assume now that  $m > m_0(\varepsilon)$ , we have by definition of  $m_0(\varepsilon)$  and  $\alpha_\varepsilon$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \log \Gamma_m &\geq \log C + r_m \log(r_m/\sigma_m) + r_m \log(\rho/(2e)) \\ &\geq \log C + \sigma_m s\psi \left( \frac{r_m}{\sigma_m} \right) \\ &\geq \log C - \varepsilon \sigma_m, \end{aligned}$$

which leads to

$$\Gamma_m \geq C e^{-\varepsilon \sigma_m}.$$

A similar estimate can be shown for the term in  $s_m$  in the bound from below of  $\Pi_m^2$ . It follows that

$$\Pi_m^2 \geq C_\varepsilon e^{-\varepsilon \sigma_m}, \quad \forall m \geq 1.$$

Gathering all the previous inequalities lead to the bound from below

$$\Pi_m \geq C_\varepsilon e^{-\varepsilon \sigma_m}, \quad \forall m \geq 1.$$

– It remains to obtain a bound for  $Q_m$ . We simply write

$$Q_m = \prod_{k \neq m} \left( 1 + \frac{\sigma_m}{\sigma_k} \right) = \frac{1}{2} \prod_{k \geq 1} \left( 1 + \frac{\sigma_m}{\sigma_k} \right).$$

Then we split the product into two parts

$$\begin{aligned} Q_m &= \frac{1}{2} \left( \prod_{k \leq k_0(\varepsilon)} \left( 1 + \frac{\sigma_m}{\sigma_k} \right) \right) \left( \prod_{k > k_0(\varepsilon)} \left( 1 + \frac{\sigma_m}{\sigma_k} \right) \right) \\ &\leq \frac{1}{2} \left( \prod_{k \leq k_0(\varepsilon)} \left( 1 + \frac{\sigma_m}{\sigma_1} \right) \right) \left( \prod_{k > k_0(\varepsilon)} e^{\frac{\sigma_m}{\sigma_k}} \right) \\ &\leq \frac{1}{2} \left( 1 + \frac{\sigma_m}{\sigma_1} \right)^{k_0(\varepsilon)} e^{\sigma_m \sum_{k \geq k_0(\varepsilon)} \frac{1}{\sigma_k}}. \end{aligned}$$

By assumption, we can choose  $k_0(\varepsilon)$  such that  $\sum_{k \geq k_0(\varepsilon)} \frac{1}{\sigma_k} \leq \varepsilon$ , so that

$$Q_m \leq \frac{1}{2} \left( 1 + \frac{\sigma_m}{\sigma_1} \right)^{k_0(\varepsilon)} e^{\varepsilon \sigma_m}.$$

The first factor is a polynomial of degree  $k_0(\varepsilon)$  in  $\sigma_m$  and thus there exists a  $C_\varepsilon$  such that

$$\frac{1}{2} \left( 1 + \frac{\sigma_m}{\sigma_1} \right)^{k_0(\varepsilon)} \leq C_\varepsilon e^{\varepsilon \sigma_m}, \quad \forall m \geq 1.$$

We finally proved that

$$Q_m \leq C_\varepsilon e^{2\sigma_m \varepsilon}.$$

Collecting the estimates on  $\Pi_m$  and  $Q_m$  we finally obtain

$$D_m \geq \frac{C_\varepsilon}{\sigma_m} e^{-12\varepsilon\sigma_m}, \quad \forall m \geq 1,$$

which gives, for some other constant  $C'_\varepsilon$  that

$$D_m \geq C'_\varepsilon e^{-13\varepsilon\sigma_m}.$$

We conclude that

$$\|q_m\|_{L^2(0,+\infty)} \leq \frac{1}{C'_\varepsilon} e^{13\varepsilon\sigma_m},$$

and the result is proved (on the time interval  $(0, +\infty)$ ).

- We need now to prove a similar result on the bounded time interval  $(0, T)$ . Let  $\Gamma_T$  be the restriction operator

$$\Gamma_T : f \in L^2(0, +\infty) \mapsto f|_{[0,T]} \in L^2(0, T),$$

which is, of course, linear, continuous and onto. Let

$$E_\infty = \text{Span}(p_k \in L^2(0, +\infty), k \geq 1),$$

and

$$E_T = \Gamma_T E_\infty \subset L^2(0, T).$$

Let us prove that there exists a  $C_T > 0$ , such that we have

$$\|f\|_{L^2(0,+\infty)} \leq C_T \|\Gamma_T f\|_{L^2(0,T)}, \quad \forall f \in E_\infty.$$

If the inequality is false, we can find a sequence  $(f_n)_n \subset L^2(0, +\infty)$  such that

$$\|f_n\|_{L^2(0,+\infty)} = 1, \quad \text{and} \quad \|\Gamma_T f_n\|_{L^2(0,T)} \leq 1/n.$$

We will set  $\varepsilon = T/3$  and use the corresponding biorthogonal sequence  $(q_k)_k$  in  $L^2(0, +\infty)$  of the functions  $(p_k)_k$  that we have built before.

It follows that

$$f_n(t) = \sum_{k \geq 1} (f_n, q_k)_{L^2(0,+\infty)} p_k(t),$$

the sum being finite since  $f_n \in E_\infty$ . We consider the extension of  $f_n$  to the complex plane

$$f_n(z) = \sum_{k \geq 1} (f_n, q_k)_{L^2(0,+\infty)} p_k(z).$$

By assumption we have  $\|f_n\|_{L^2(0,+\infty)} = 1$  and thus  $|(f_n, q_k)_{L^2(0,+\infty)}| \leq \|q_k\|_{L^2} \leq K_\varepsilon e^{\varepsilon\sigma_k}$ . The function  $f_n$  is an holomorphic function that satisfies (the right-hand side being possibly infinite)

$$|f_n(z)| \leq K_\varepsilon \sum_{k \geq 1} e^{\varepsilon\sigma_k} e^{-\sigma_k \mathcal{R}e(z)}.$$

We introduce the half-plane  $P_\varepsilon = \{z \in \mathbb{C}, \mathcal{R}e z > 2\varepsilon\}$ , and observe that

$$|f_n(z)| \leq K_\varepsilon \sum_{k \geq 1} e^{-\varepsilon\sigma_k} < +\infty, \quad \forall z \in P_\varepsilon.$$

The sequence  $(f_n)_n$  is thus a sequence of holomorphic functions, which is bounded in  $L^\infty(P_\varepsilon)$ . Montel's theorem implies that we can extract a subsequence, still denoted by  $(f_n)_n$  that converges locally uniformly towards a holomorphic function  $f$  in  $P_\varepsilon$ .

By construction of  $(f_n)_n$  we also have  $\|\Gamma_T f_n\|_{L^2(0,T)} \rightarrow 0$  when  $n \rightarrow \infty$  which implies that  $f = 0$  on  $(2\varepsilon, T)$ . Since  $f$  is holomorphic, it is necessary equal to 0 everywhere in  $P_\varepsilon$ .

As a consequence, for any  $S > T$ , we have

$$\int_0^S |f_n(t)|^2 dt \xrightarrow{n \rightarrow \infty} \int_0^S |f(t)|^2 dt = 0.$$

But the above estimate on  $f_n(t)$ , for  $t > S$ , leads to

$$|f_n(t)| \leq K_\varepsilon \sum_{k \geq 1} e^{\varepsilon \sigma_k} e^{-\sigma_k t},$$

and thus

$$\int_S^{+\infty} |f_n(t)| dt \leq K_\varepsilon \sum_{k \geq 1} \frac{e^{\varepsilon \sigma_k}}{\sigma_k} e^{-\sigma_k S} \xrightarrow{S \rightarrow \infty} 0,$$

uniformly in  $n$ . Since  $(f_n)_n$  is uniformly bounded this implies

$$\int_S^{+\infty} |f_n(t)|^2 dt \leq C \int_S^{+\infty} |f_n(t)| dt \xrightarrow{S \rightarrow \infty} 0,$$

uniformly in  $n$ . All in all, we have finally proved that  $\|f_n\|_{L^2(0,+\infty)} \rightarrow 0$  which is a contradiction with the initial assumption that  $\|f_n\|_{L^2(0,+\infty)} = 1$ .

Consequently, the operator  $\Gamma_T$  can be extended from the Hilbert space  $F_\infty = \overline{E_\infty}$  onto the Hilbert space  $F_T = \overline{E_T}$  and the above inequality shows that this operator has a bounded inverse.

We can then set  $\tilde{q}_k = (\Gamma_T^{-1})^* q_k$ , where  $(q_k)_k$  is any biorthogonal family of  $(p_k)_k$  in  $L^2(0, +\infty)$ . We now check that this family satisfies the required properties

- For any  $k, l$ , we have

$$(\tilde{q}_k, p_l)_{L^2(0,T)} = ((\Gamma_T^{-1})^* q_k, \Gamma_T p_l)_{L^2(0,T)} = (q_k, (\Gamma_T)^{-1} \Gamma_T p_l)_{L^2(0,+\infty)} = \delta_{kl}.$$

- For any  $k \geq 1$ , we have

$$\|\tilde{q}_k\|_{L^2(0,T)} \leq C_T \|q_k\|_{L^2(0,+\infty)},$$

and thus, the bounds on  $(q_k)_k$  are transferred in  $(\tilde{q}_k)_k$ .

### 1.3 The multi-D case

This is the opportunity to encounter our first *Carleman estimate*. Those are weighted a priori estimate on solutions of PDEs that imply many important qualitative properties for those solutions such as unique continuation, spectral estimates, and so on. We refer for instance to the references [LRL11] and [Cor07].

We first state the following two estimates without proof. We shall actually give the proof of a slightly more general estimate in Section 3.

#### Theorem IV.1.13 (Boundary Carleman estimate)

Let  $\Gamma$  be a non empty open subset of  $\partial\Omega$ . There exists a function  $\varphi \in \mathcal{C}^2(\overline{\Omega})$ , a  $C > 0$  and  $s_0 > 0$  such that, for any  $u \in H^2(\Omega) \cap H_0^1(\Omega)$  and any  $s \geq s_0$ , we have

$$s^3 \|e^{s\varphi} u\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2 + s \|e^{s\varphi} \nabla u\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2 \leq C \left( \|e^{s\varphi} \Delta u\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2 + s \|e^{s\varphi} \partial_n u\|_{L^2(\Gamma)}^2 \right). \quad (\text{IV.13})$$



**Theorem IV.1.14 (Interior Carleman estimate)**

Let  $\omega$  be a non empty open subset of  $\Omega$ . There exists a function  $\varphi \in \mathcal{C}^2(\bar{\Omega})$ , a  $C > 0$  and a  $s_0 > 0$  such that, for any  $u \in H^2(\Omega) \cap H_0^1(\Omega)$  and any  $s \geq s_0$ , we have

$$s^3 \|e^{s\varphi} u\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2 + s \|e^{s\varphi} \nabla u\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2 \leq C \left( \|e^{s\varphi} \Delta u\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2 + s^3 \|e^{s\varphi} u\|_{L^2(\omega)}^2 \right). \quad (\text{IV.14})$$

**Proposition IV.1.15**

Let  $\omega \subset \Omega$  and  $\Gamma \subset \partial\Omega$  as before, then the eigenfunctions of  $\mathcal{A}$  satisfy

$$\|\phi_k\|_{L^2(\omega)} \neq 0, \text{ and } \|\partial_n \phi_k\|_{L^2(\Gamma)} \neq 0, \text{ for any } k \geq 1.$$

**Proof :**

We start from the equation satisfied by  $\phi_k$  under the following form

$$-\gamma(\Delta \phi_k) - 2\nabla \phi_k \cdot \nabla \gamma - (\Delta \gamma) \phi_k + \alpha \phi_k = \lambda_k \phi_k,$$

which gives

$$\Delta \phi_k = \frac{\alpha - \lambda_k}{\gamma} \phi_k - 2 \frac{\nabla \phi_k \cdot \nabla \gamma}{\gamma} - \frac{\Delta \gamma}{\gamma} \phi_k.$$

We deduce the pointwise inequality

$$|\Delta \phi_k| \leq C_{\alpha, \gamma} (1 + |\lambda_k|) |\phi_k| + C_\gamma |\nabla \phi_k|.$$

- Assume first that  $\phi_k = 0$  on  $\omega$ . We can apply (IV.14) in which the observation term cancels and we get

$$s^3 \|e^{s\varphi} \phi_k\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2 + s \|e^{s\varphi} \nabla \phi_k\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2 \leq C(1 + \lambda_k^2) \|e^{s\varphi} \phi_k\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2 + C \|e^{s\varphi} \nabla \phi_k\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2.$$

Taking  $s$  large enough (depending on  $k$ ) we can conclude that

$$s^3 \|e^{s\varphi} \phi_k\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2 + s \|e^{s\varphi} \nabla \phi_k\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2 \leq 0,$$

which implies  $\phi_k = 0$  and thus a contradiction.

- If we assume that  $\partial_n \phi_k = 0$  on  $\Gamma$ , we apply the same reasoning with the other Carleman estimate.

■

**Remark IV.1.16**

The reasoning above shows that for  $s = C_1 \lambda_k^{2/3}$  we have

$$s^3 \|e^{s\varphi} \phi_k\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2 + s \|e^{s\varphi} \nabla \phi_k\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2 \leq C s^3 \|e^{s\varphi} \phi_k\|_{L^2(\omega)}^2,$$

and thus

$$C_1^3 s^3 e^{2s \inf \varphi} \|\phi_k\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2 \leq C s^3 e^{2s \sup \varphi} \|\phi_k\|_{L^2(\omega)}^2.$$

Since  $\|\phi_k\|_{L^2(\Omega)} = 1$ , we deduce

$$\|\phi_k\|_{L^2(\omega)}^2 \geq C e^{-C_3 s} = C e^{-C_4 \lambda_k^{2/3}}.$$

Similarly, we can show

$$\|\partial_n \phi_k\|_{L^2(\Gamma)}^2 \geq C e^{-C \lambda_k^{2/3}}.$$

Imagine that the sequence of eigenvalues of the Laplace operator on a bounded domain in  $\mathbb{R}^d$  satisfy both conditions

$$\sum_{k \geq 1} \frac{1}{\lambda_k} < +\infty, \quad \text{and} \quad \inf_k |\lambda_{k+1} - \lambda_k| > 0,$$

then we can apply the moments method as before by using the (exponential) lower bounds given in the remark above. Despite the fact that those lower bounds are much less precise than their 1D counterpart, the method will be working.

Unfortunately, it is well known that the above requirements on the sequence of eigenvalues for the Laplace operator does not hold as soon as the dimension is at least equal to 2. Indeed, the Weyl asymptotic formula gives

$$\lambda_k \sim_{+\infty} C k^{2/d},$$

which prevents the series from converging. Moreover, we know that it might be multiple eigenvalues. That is the fundamental reason why we need other methods to deal with the null-controllability in the multi-D case.

However, with the above elements, we have proved the approximate controllability properties for the heat equation.

### Theorem IV.1.17

*Under the above assumptions, both problems (IV.5) and (IV.6) are approximately controllable from any initial data  $y_0 \in F$  and at any time  $T > 0$ .*

#### Proof :

From the Fattorini-Hautus theorem (Theorem III.3.7), we see that the approximate controllability for (IV.5) amounts to prove that for any  $k \geq 1$  we have  $\phi_k \neq 0$  in  $\omega$  identically, and that the approximate controllability for (IV.6) amounts to prove that for any  $k \geq 1$  we have  $\partial_n \phi_k \neq 0$  on  $\Gamma_0$ .

Those properties are exactly the ones given in Proposition IV.1.15 and the claim is proved.  $\blacksquare$

## 2 The method of Lebeau and Robbiano

In order to deal with the null-controllability problem in dimension greater than 1, we will need a much stronger spectral property for the eigenfunctions of  $\mathcal{A}$ .

More precisely, we will prove the following spectral inequality (taken from [LRL11], see also [LR95]) that will be crucial in our analysis.

### Theorem IV.2.18 (Lebeau-Robbiano spectral inequality)

*Let  $\Omega$  as before and  $\omega$  a non empty open subset of  $\Omega$ . There exists a  $C > 0$  depending only on  $\alpha, \gamma, \omega$  such that: for any  $\mu > 0$  we have*

$$\left\| \sum_{k|\lambda_k \leq \mu} a_k \phi_k \right\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2 \leq C e^{C\sqrt{\mu}} \left\| \sum_{k|\lambda_k \leq \mu} a_k \phi_k \right\|_{L^2(\omega)}^2, \quad \forall (a_k)_k \subset \mathbb{R}.$$

#### Remark IV.2.19

*Since the family  $(\phi_k)_k$  is orthonormal in  $L^2(\Omega)$ , the left-hand side of this inequality is simply equal to  $\sum_{k|\lambda_k \leq \mu} |a_k|^2$ . The inequality can also be written as*

$$\|v\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2 \leq C e^{C\sqrt{\mu}} \|v\|_{L^2(\omega)}^2, \quad \forall v \in E_\mu,$$

*where  $E_\mu$  is defined in (IV.3).*

**Remark IV.2.20**

The above spectral inequality (as well as the proof below of the controllability result) are not available for the boundary control problem. This is very easy to see even in 1D since for any two different eigenfunctions  $\phi_k, \phi_l$  for  $k \neq l$  we can find a linear combination  $\phi = a_1\phi_k + a_2\phi_l$  such that  $\partial_x\phi|_x = 0 = 0$  with  $\phi \neq 0$ .

This inequality can be proved by means of another kind of global elliptic Carleman estimate that will be proved in Section 3. We only give here the simplified version of this inequality that we need at that point.

**Proposition IV.2.21**

Let  $\Omega$  and  $\omega$  as before. Let  $T^* > 0$  be given and we set  $Q = (0, T^*) \times \Omega$ . There exists a positive function  $\varphi \in C^2(\bar{Q})$  such that  $\nabla_x\varphi(T^*, \cdot) = 0$  and  $C, s_0 > 0$  such that:

For any  $s \geq s_0$ , and any function  $u \in C^2(\bar{Q})$  satisfying  $u(0, \cdot) = 0$  and  $u = 0$  on  $[0, T] \times \partial\Omega$ , we have the estimate

$$s^3 e^{2s\varphi(T^*)} \int_{\Omega} |u(T^*, \cdot)|^2 \leq C s e^{2s\varphi(T^*)} \int_{\Omega} |\nabla_x u(T^*, \cdot)|^2 + C s \int_{\omega} |e^{s\varphi(0, \cdot)} \partial_{\tau} u(0, \cdot)|^2 + 2 \|e^{s\varphi}(\partial_{\tau}^2 u - \mathcal{A}u)\|_{L^2(Q)}^2.$$

**Proof (of Theorem IV.2.18):**

Let

$$v = \sum_{k|\lambda_k \leq \mu} a_k \phi_k \in E_{\mu},$$

be any element in  $E_{\mu}$ . We define the function  $u : Q \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  as follows

$$u(\tau, x) = \sum_{k|\lambda_k \leq \mu} a_k \frac{\sinh(\sqrt{\lambda_k} \tau)}{\sqrt{\lambda_k}} \phi_k(x).$$

This function is the unique solution of the following Cauchy problem for the elliptic augmented operator  $\partial_{\tau}^2 - \mathcal{A}$ , indeed we have

$$u(0, \cdot) = 0, \quad \partial_{\tau} u(0, \cdot) = v, \quad (\partial_{\tau}^2 - \mathcal{A})(u) = 0.$$

We can apply the above Carleman estimate to this particular function  $u$  and find

$$s^3 e^{2s\varphi(T)} \int_{\Omega} |u(T^*, \cdot)|^2 \leq C s \int_{\omega} |e^{s\varphi(0, \cdot)} v|^2 + C s e^{2s\varphi(T)} \int_{\Omega} |\nabla_x u(T^*, \cdot)|^2. \quad (\text{IV.15})$$

Let us compute the norms at time  $T^*$ :

- Since the  $\phi_k$  are orthonormal in  $L^2(\Omega)$ , we simply have

$$\int_{\Omega} |u(T^*, \cdot)|^2 = \sum_{k|\lambda_k \leq \mu} \frac{|a_k|^2}{\lambda_k} |\sinh(\sqrt{\lambda_k} T^*)|^2 \geq \frac{1}{\mu} \sum_{k|\lambda_k \leq \mu} |a_k|^2 |\sinh(\sqrt{\lambda_k} T^*)|^2. \quad (\text{IV.16})$$

- For the gradient term, we first observe that

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\Omega} |\nabla_x u(T^*, \cdot)|^2 &\leq C \int_{\Omega} \gamma |\nabla_x u(T^*, \cdot)|^2 = C \langle \mathcal{A}u(T, *), u(T^*, \cdot) \rangle_{L^2(\Omega)} - C \int_{\Omega} \alpha |u(T^*, \cdot)|^2 \\ &\leq C \langle \mathcal{A}u(T, *), u(T^*, \cdot) \rangle_{L^2(\Omega)} + C \int_{\Omega} |u(T^*, \cdot)|^2. \end{aligned}$$

Then we use that, for any  $k, l$ , we have

$$\langle \mathcal{A}\phi_k, \phi_l \rangle_{L^2} = \lambda_k \delta_{kl},$$

to write

$$\langle \mathcal{A}u(T^*, \cdot), u(T^*, \cdot) \rangle = \sum_{k|\lambda_k \leq \mu} |a_k|^2 |\sinh(\sqrt{\lambda_k} T^*)|^2.$$

Using (IV.16), we have finally proved that

$$\int_{\Omega} |\nabla_x u(T^*, \cdot)|^2 \leq C(1 + \mu) \int_{\Omega} |u(T^*, \cdot)|^2. \quad (\text{IV.17})$$

Using (IV.17) in (IV.15), we have finally obtained

$$s^3 e^{2s\varphi(T)} \int_{\Omega} |u(T^*, \cdot)|^2 \leq C s \int_{\omega} |e^{s\varphi(0, \cdot)} v|^2 + C s e^{2s\varphi(T)} (1 + \mu) \int_{\Omega} |u(T^*, \cdot)|^2.$$

Since this inequality holds for any value of  $s$ , large enough, we see that we can choose  $s = \tilde{C}\sqrt{\mu}$  for some  $\tilde{C}$  in order to absorb the last term by the left-hand side term of the inequality. It remains, for this particular value of  $s$

$$\mu^{3/2} e^{C\sqrt{\mu}\varphi(T)} \int_{\Omega} |u(T^*, \cdot)|^2 \leq C\sqrt{\mu} \int_{\omega} |e^{C\sqrt{\mu}\varphi(0, \cdot)} v|^2,$$

and then, for other values of the constants, we get

$$\int_{\Omega} |u(T^*, \cdot)|^2 \leq \frac{C}{\mu} e^{C\sqrt{\mu}} \|v\|_{L^2(\omega)}^2.$$

To conclude, we write

$$\int_{\Omega} |u(T^*, \cdot)|^2 = \sum_{k|\lambda_k \leq \mu} |a_k|^2 \left| \frac{\sinh(\sqrt{\lambda_k} T^*)}{\sqrt{\lambda_k}} \right|^2 \geq C_{T^*} \sum_{k|\lambda_k \leq \mu} |a_k|^2.$$

With this inequality at hand we can prove a partial observability inequality and a related partial distributed controllability result. We recall that we assume that all the eigenvalues of  $\mathcal{A}$  are positive. ■

### Proposition IV.2.22

*There exists a  $C > 0$  such that for any time  $\tau > 0$  and any  $\mu > 0$ , we have the following inequality*

$$\|e^{-\tau\mathcal{A}} q_T\|_E^2 \leq \frac{C e^{C\sqrt{\mu}}}{\tau} \int_0^{\tau} \|e^{-(\tau-s)\mathcal{A}} q_T\|_{L^2(\omega)}^2 ds, \quad \forall q_T \in E_{\mu}.$$

Note that the operator  $\mathcal{A}$  is self-adjoint and thus the adjoint operator that we should have put in this inequality is nothing but  $\mathcal{A}^* = \mathcal{A}$ . Moreover, we also have  $\mathcal{B} = \mathcal{B}^* = \mathbf{1}_{\omega}$  which explains the form of the right hand side.

**Proof :**

Since the space  $E_{\mu}$  is stable by the operator  $\mathcal{A}$  (it is built upon its eigenfunctions), we know that  $e^{-(\tau-s)\mathcal{A}} q_T$  belongs to  $E_{\mu}$  as soon as  $q_T \in E_{\mu}$ . Therefore, we can apply the Lebeau-Robbiano spectral inequality to this particular element of  $E_{\mu}$

$$\|e^{-(\tau-s)\mathcal{A}} q_T\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2 \leq C e^{C\sqrt{\mu}} \|e^{-(\tau-s)\mathcal{A}} q_T\|_{L^2(\omega)}^2.$$

By the dissipation estimate (IV.2), we find that

$$\|e^{-\tau\mathcal{A}} q_T\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2 \leq C e^{C\sqrt{\mu}} \|e^{-(\tau-s)\mathcal{A}} q_T\|_{L^2(\omega)}^2,$$

(with  $\lambda_1$  possibly negative). We can now integrate this inequality with respect to  $s$  on  $(0, \tau)$  to find

$$\tau \|e^{-\tau\mathcal{A}}q_T\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2 \leq C e^{C\sqrt{\mu}} \int_0^\tau \|e^{-(\tau-s)\mathcal{A}}q_T\|_{L^2(\omega)}^2,$$

which gives the result. ■

For any  $\mu > 0$ , and  $\tau > 0$ , we consider the following finite dimensional control problem

$$\begin{cases} \partial_t y + \mathcal{A}y = P_\mu(1_\omega v(t, x)) \\ y(0) = y_{0,\mu} \in E_\mu, \end{cases} \quad (\text{IV.18})$$

with  $v \in L^2(0, \tau; E_\mu)$ . Since  $E_\mu$  is stable by  $\mathcal{A}$ , this problem can be recast in the ODE form

$$y'(t) + A_\mu y = B_\mu v,$$

by setting  $A_\mu = \mathcal{A}|_{E_\mu}$  and  $B_\mu = P_\mu(1_\omega \cdot)$ . The state space is  $E = E_\mu$  and the control space is also  $U = E_\mu$  with their natural inner product.

We observe that

$$A_\mu^* = A_\mu, \quad \text{and} \quad B_\mu^* = B_\mu.$$

### Corollary IV.2.23

*For any  $\mu > 0$ ,  $\tau > 0$  and  $y_{0,\mu} \in E_\mu$ , the partial control System (IV.18) is null-controllable at time  $\tau$  and more precisely, there exists control  $v_\mu \in L^2(0, \tau, E_\mu)$  such that the solution satisfies  $y(\tau) = 0$  and such that*

$$\|v_\mu\|_{L^2(0,\tau;E_\mu)} \leq C \frac{e^{C\sqrt{\mu}}}{\sqrt{\tau}} \|y_{0,\mu}\|_{E_\mu}.$$

### Proof :

We simply use the results we proved in the finite dimensional framework and in particular the second point of Theorem II.7.25. ■

### Proposition IV.2.24

*For any  $\mu > 0$ ,  $\tau > 0$  and  $y_0 \in E$ , there exists a control  $v_\mu \in L^2(0, \tau, L^2(\Omega))$  for our original system (IV.5) such that*

$$P_\mu y(\tau) = 0,$$

*and*

$$\begin{aligned} \|v_\mu\|_{L^2(0,\tau;E)} &\leq C \frac{e^{C\sqrt{\mu}}}{\sqrt{\tau}} \|y_0\|_E, \\ \|y(\tau)\|_E &\leq C_2 e^{C_2\sqrt{\mu}} \|y_0\|_E. \end{aligned}$$

### Proof :

We take  $v_\mu$  to be the control for the partial control system obtained in Corollary IV.2.23 with the initial data  $y_{0,\mu} = P_\mu y_0$ . Let  $y$  be the solution of the full system associated with this control

$$\partial_t y + \mathcal{A}y = 1_\omega v_\mu, \quad y(0) = y_0.$$

We apply the projector  $P_\mu$  (which commutes with  $\mathcal{A}$ ) to get

$$\partial_t(P_\mu y) + \mathcal{A}(P_\mu y) = P_\mu(1_\omega v_\mu), \quad (P_\mu y)(0) = P_\mu y_0.$$

This proves that  $P_\mu y$  is the (unique) solution of (IV.18), and by construction we have  $P_\mu y(\tau) = 0$ . Moreover, since  $P_\mu$  is an orthogonal projection in  $E$ , we have

$$\|v_\mu\|_{L^2(0,\tau;E)} \leq C e^{C\sqrt{\mu}} \|P_\mu y_0\|_E \leq C e^{C\sqrt{\mu}} \|y_0\|_E.$$

Finally, we write the Duhamel formula

$$y(\tau) = y_0 + \int_0^\tau e^{-(\tau-s)\mathcal{A}} \mathcal{B} v_\mu(s) ds,$$

and take the norm in  $E$

$$\|y(\tau)\|_E \leq \|y_0\|_E + \int_0^\tau \|e^{-(\tau-s)\mathcal{A}} \mathcal{B} v_\mu(s)\|_E ds.$$

We use now the dissipation estimate for  $\mathcal{A}$  (IV.2) (with  $\lambda_1 > 0$  here) and the fact that  $\mathcal{B} = 1_\omega$  is bounded with norm 1. It follows

$$\|y(\tau)\|_E \leq \|y_0\|_E + C \int_0^\tau \|v_\mu(s)\|_E ds \leq \|y_0\|_E + C\sqrt{\tau} \|v_\mu\|_{L^2(0,\tau;E)},$$

and the conclusion follows by the estimate we got on the norm of  $v_\mu$ . ■

### Corollary IV.2.25

For any  $\mu > 0$ ,  $0 < \tau < T$  and  $y_0 \in E$ , there exists a control  $v_\mu \in L^2(0, \tau, L^2(\Omega))$  such that

$$\begin{aligned} \|v_\mu\|_{L^2(0,\tau;E)} &\leq C \frac{e^{C\sqrt{\mu}}}{\sqrt{\tau}} \|y_0\|_E, \\ \|y(\tau)\|_E &\leq C_2 e^{C_2\sqrt{\mu} - \frac{\tau\mu}{2}} \|y_0\|_E. \end{aligned}$$

### Proof :

The idea is to use the previous proposition on the time interval  $(0, \tau/2)$ . This gives us a control  $w_\mu \in L^2(0, \tau/2; E)$  such that  $P_\mu y(\tau/2) = 0$  and

$$\begin{aligned} \|w_\mu\|_{L^2(0,\tau/2;E)} &\leq C \frac{e^{C\sqrt{\mu}}}{\sqrt{\tau}} \|y_0\|_E, \\ \|y(\tau/2)\|_E &\leq C_2 e^{C_2\sqrt{\mu}} \|y_0\|_E. \end{aligned}$$

Now, on the second half of the time interval we *do nothing* in order to take advantage of the natural dissipation of the system and to the fact that all frequencies less than  $\mu$  have been killed at time  $\tau/2$ . It means that the control we finally consider is

$$v_\mu(t) = \begin{cases} w_\mu(t), & \text{for } t \in (0, \tau/2), \\ 0, & \text{for } t \in (\tau/2, \tau). \end{cases}$$

It is clear that  $v_\mu$  and  $w_\mu$  have the same  $L^2$ -norm. Moreover, since  $v_\mu = 0$  on  $(\tau/2, \tau)$ , we have

$$y(\tau) = e^{-\frac{\tau}{2}\mathcal{A}} y(\tau/2),$$

and thus, since  $P_\mu y(\tau/2) = 0$ , it follows by (IV.4)

$$\|y(\tau)\|_E \leq e^{-\frac{\tau}{2}\mu} \|y(\tau/2)\|_E \leq C_2 e^{C_2\sqrt{\mu} - \frac{\tau\mu}{2}} \|y_0\|_E.$$

### Theorem IV.2.26 (Lebeau-Robbiano null-controllability theorem [LR95])

For any  $T > 0$ , the heat-like equation (IV.1), is null-controllable at time  $T$ .

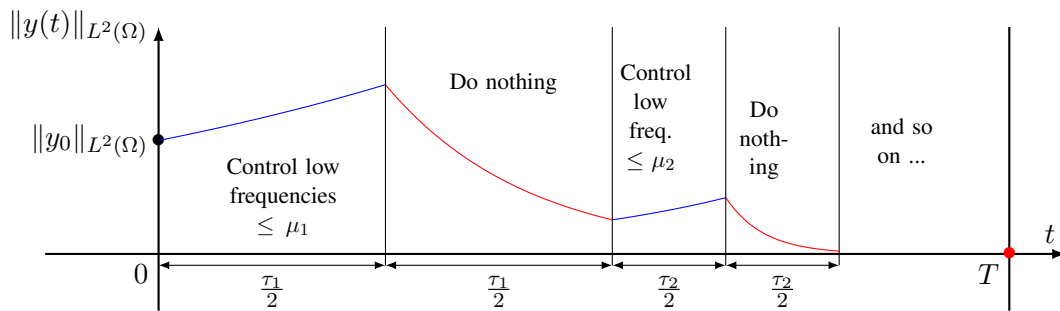


Figure IV.1: The Lebeau-Robbiano method

**Proof :**

The idea is to split the time interval  $(0, T)$  into small subintervals of size  $\tau_j$ ,  $j \geq 1$  with

$$\sum_{j \geq 1} \tau_j = T,$$

and to apply successively a partial control as in the previous corollary with a cut frequency  $\mu_j$  that tends to infinity when  $j \rightarrow \infty$ .

More precisely, we set

$$\tau_j = \frac{T}{2^j}, \text{ and } \mu_j = \beta(2^j)^2,$$

with  $\beta > 0$  to be determined later.

Let  $T_j = \sum_{k=1}^j \tau_k$ , for  $j \geq 1$ .

- During the time interval  $(0, \tau_1) = (0, T_1)$ , we apply a control  $v_1$  as given by Corollary IV.2.25 with  $\mu = \mu_1$ , in such a way that

$$\|v_1\|_{L^2(0, T_1; E)} \leq C \frac{e^{C\sqrt{\mu_1}}}{\sqrt{\tau_1}} \|y_0\|_E,$$

$$\|y(T_1)\|_E \leq C_2 e^{C_2\sqrt{\mu_1} - \frac{\tau_1\mu_1}{2}} \|y_0\|_E.$$

- During the time interval  $(\tau_1, \tau_1 + \tau_2)$  we apply a control  $v_2$  as given by Corollary IV.2.25 with  $\mu = \mu_2$ , in such a way that

$$\|v_2\|_{L^2(T_1, T_2; E)} \leq C \frac{e^{C\sqrt{\mu_2}}}{\sqrt{\tau_2}} \|y(T_1)\|_E,$$

$$\|y(T_2)\|_E \leq C_2^2 e^{C_2(\sqrt{\mu_1} + \sqrt{\mu_2}) - \frac{\tau_1\mu_1}{2} - \frac{\tau_2\mu_2}{2}} \|y_0\|_E.$$

- And so on, by induction we build a control  $v_j$  on the time interval  $(T_{j-1}, T_j)$  such that

$$\|v_j\|_{L^2(T_{j-1}, T_j; E)} \leq C \frac{e^{C\sqrt{\mu_j}}}{\sqrt{\tau_j}} \|y(T_{j-1})\|_E,$$

$$\|y(T_j)\|_E \leq C_2^j e^{C_2 \sum_{k=1}^j \sqrt{\mu_k} - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{k=1}^j \tau_k \mu_k} \|y_0\|_E.$$

- By construction, we have

$$\begin{aligned} C_2 \sum_{k=1}^j \sqrt{\mu_k} - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{k=1}^j \tau_k \mu_k &= C_2 \sqrt{\beta} \sum_{k=1}^j 2^k - \frac{\beta}{2} T \sum_{k=1}^j 2^k \\ &= (C_2 \sqrt{\beta} - \frac{\beta}{2} T) (2^{j+1} - 1) \end{aligned}$$

We are thus led to choose  $\beta$  large enough so that

$$\tilde{\beta} := \frac{\beta}{2}T - C_2\sqrt{\beta} > 0,$$

and we have obtained that for any  $j$ ,

$$\|y(T_j)\|_E \leq C_3 C_2^j e^{-\tilde{\beta}2^{j+1}} \|y_0\|_E.$$

- Going back to the estimate of the norm of  $v_j$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \|v_j\|_{L^2(T_{j-1}, T_j; E)} &\leq C \frac{e^{C\sqrt{\mu_j}}}{\sqrt{\tau_j}} \|y(T_{j-1})\|_E \\ &\leq \frac{CC_3}{\sqrt{T}} 2^{j/2} C_2^{j-1} e^{C\sqrt{\beta}2^j - \tilde{\beta}2^j} \|y_0\|_E. \end{aligned}$$

Wee that we can choose  $\beta$  even larger to ensure that

$$\bar{\beta} := \tilde{\beta} - C\sqrt{\beta} > 0.$$

We finally got the estimate

$$\|v_j\|_{L^2(T_{j-1}, T_j; E)} \leq \frac{CC_3}{\sqrt{T}} 2^{j/2} C_2^{j-1} e^{-\bar{\beta}2^j} \|y_0\|_E.$$

- All the previous estimates show that

$$\sum_{j \geq 1} \|v_j\|_{L^2(T_{j-1}, T_j; E)}^2 < +\infty,$$

and in particular the function  $v$  that is obtained by gluing all together the  $(v_j)_j$  is an element of  $L^2(0, T; E)$ . The associated solution  $y$  of the PDE is continuous in time on  $[0, T]$  with values in  $E$  and satisfies

$$\|y(T_j)\| \leq C_3 C_2^j e^{-\tilde{\beta}2^{j+1}} \|y_0\|_E \xrightarrow{j \rightarrow \infty} 0.$$

This implies  $y(T) = 0$ , since  $T_j \rightarrow T$  as  $j \rightarrow \infty$ .

The claim is proved. ■

### Remark IV.2.27

*A careful inspection of the proof shows that one can take  $\beta$  of the form*

$$\beta = \frac{\alpha}{T^2},$$

*with  $\alpha > 0$  large enough independent of  $T$ . It follows that  $\tilde{\beta}$  and  $\bar{\beta}$  will be proportional to  $1/T$  and therefore we can obtain the following estimate on the control cost*

$$\|v\|_{L^2(0, T; E)} \leq C e^{\frac{C}{T}} \|y_0\|_E.$$

*This exponential behavior of the cost in the limit  $T \rightarrow 0$  is actually optimal.*



### 3 Global elliptic Carleman estimates and applications

As we have seen below, the Carleman inequalities aim at giving **global** weighted estimates of a solution of a PDE (here we shall specifically consider elliptic PDEs) as a function of source terms and of some **partial information** on the solution itself either on a part of the boundary, or on a part of the domain. For a more complete discussion about those kind of estimates (including some insights on the profound reasons why they are true) we refer for instance to [LRL11, Ery17].

#### 3.1 The basic computation

Let  $\Omega$  be a Lipschitz domain of  $\mathbb{R}^d$  and  $\varphi \in C^2(\overline{\Omega}, \mathbb{R})$  be a smooth function to be determined later.

##### Proposition IV.3.28

For any  $u \in C^2(\overline{\Omega}, \mathbb{R})$ , and any  $s \geq 0$ , we set  $v = e^{s\varphi}u$ . The following inequality holds

$$\begin{aligned} s^3 \int_{\Omega} (2(D^2\varphi)(\nabla\varphi, \nabla\varphi) - \Delta\varphi|\nabla\varphi|^2)|v|^2 + s \int_{\Omega} [2(D^2\varphi)(\nabla v, \nabla v) + \Delta\varphi|\nabla v|^2] \\ - s^3 \int_{\partial\Omega} |\nabla\varphi|^2 \partial_n \varphi |v|^2 - s \int_{\partial\Omega} \partial_n \varphi |\partial_n v|^2 \\ \leq -2s \int_{\Omega} v \nabla v \cdot \nabla \Delta\varphi + s^2 \int_{\Omega} |\Delta\varphi|^2 |v|^2 \\ - s \int_{\partial\Omega} \partial_n \varphi |\nabla_{\parallel} v|^2 - 2s \int_{\partial\Omega} \partial_n v (\nabla_{\parallel} v \cdot \nabla_{\parallel} \varphi) + 2s \int_{\partial\Omega} \Delta\varphi v \partial_n v \\ + \|e^{s\varphi}(\Delta u)\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2. \end{aligned}$$

##### Proof :

We first write the following derivation formulas

$$\begin{aligned} \nabla e^{s\varphi} &= (s\nabla\varphi)e^{s\varphi}, \\ \Delta e^{s\varphi} &= s^2|\nabla\varphi|^2 e^{s\varphi} + s(\Delta\varphi)e^{s\varphi}. \end{aligned}$$

Then we set  $f = \Delta u$  and we compute

$$\begin{aligned} \nabla v &= e^{s\varphi}(\nabla u) + (\nabla e^{s\varphi})u = e^{s\varphi}(\nabla u) + s\nabla\varphi(e^{s\varphi}u) = e^{s\varphi}(\nabla u) + s(\nabla\varphi)v, \\ \Delta v &= \Delta(e^{s\varphi}u) = (\Delta e^{s\varphi})u + 2(\nabla e^{s\varphi}) \cdot (\nabla u) + e^{s\varphi}(\Delta u), \end{aligned}$$

which gives

$$\Delta v = s^2|\nabla\varphi|^2 v + s(\Delta\varphi)v + 2s(\nabla\varphi) \cdot (\nabla v - s\nabla\varphi v) + e^{s\varphi}f,$$

and finally

$$\Delta v = -s^2|\nabla\varphi|^2 v + s(\Delta\varphi)v + 2s\nabla\varphi \cdot \nabla v + e^{s\varphi}f. \quad (\text{IV.19})$$

We write this formula in the following form

$$\underbrace{\left(\Delta v + s^2|\nabla\varphi|^2 v\right)}_{=M_1 v} + \underbrace{\left(-2s\nabla\varphi \cdot \nabla v - 2s\Delta\varphi v\right)}_{=M_2 v} = e^{s\varphi}f - s(\Delta\varphi)v.$$

We write

$$\begin{aligned} 2(M_1 v, M_2 v)_{L^2} &\leq \|M_1 v\|_{L^2}^2 + 2(M_1 v, M_2 v)_{L^2} + \|M_2 v\|_{L^2}^2 = \|M_1 v + M_2 v\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2 \\ &= \|e^{s\varphi}f - s(\Delta\varphi)v\|_{L^2}^2 \leq 2\|e^{s\varphi}f\|_{L^2}^2 + 2s^2\|(\Delta\varphi)v\|_{L^2}^2. \end{aligned}$$

The two right-hand side terms are the ones we expect in the inequality. Let us now compute the inner product  $(M_1 v, M_2 v)_{L^2}$ . We denote by  $I_{ij}$  the inner product of the term number  $i$  of  $M_1 v$  with the term number  $j$  of  $M_2 v$ .

- Term  $I_{11}$  : We perform two integration by parts

$$\begin{aligned}
I_{11} &= -2s \int_{\Omega} (\nabla\varphi \cdot \nabla v) \Delta v = -2s \sum_i \int_{\Omega} \partial_i \varphi \partial_i v \Delta v \\
&= 2s \sum_i \int_{\Omega} \partial_i \nabla\varphi \cdot \nabla v \partial_i v + 2s \sum_i \int_{\Omega} \partial_i \varphi \nabla \partial_i v \cdot \nabla v - 2s \int_{\partial\Omega} (\nabla\varphi \cdot \nabla v) \partial_n v \\
&= 2s \int_{\Omega} D^2\varphi(\nabla v, \nabla v) + s \sum_i \int_{\Omega} \partial_i \varphi \partial_i (|\nabla v|^2) - 2s \int_{\partial\Omega} (\nabla\varphi \cdot \nabla v) \partial_n v \\
&= 2s \int_{\Omega} D^2\varphi(\nabla v, \nabla v) - s \int_{\Omega} \Delta\varphi |\nabla v|^2 + s \int_{\partial\Omega} \partial_n \varphi |\nabla v|^2 - 2s \int_{\partial\Omega} (\nabla\varphi \cdot \nabla v) \partial_n v.
\end{aligned}$$

- Term  $I_{12}$ : We perform one integration by parts

$$\begin{aligned}
I_{12} &= -2s \int_{\Omega} \Delta\varphi \Delta v v \\
&= 2s \int_{\Omega} (\Delta\varphi) |\nabla v|^2 + 2s \int_{\Omega} (\nabla\Delta\varphi \cdot \nabla v) v - 2s \int_{\partial\Omega} \Delta\varphi v \partial_n v.
\end{aligned}$$

- Term  $I_{21}$  : We perform one integration by parts

$$\begin{aligned}
I_{21} &= -2s^3 \int_{\Omega} |\nabla\varphi|^2 (\nabla\varphi \cdot \nabla v) v \\
&= -s^3 \int_{\Omega} |\nabla\varphi|^2 (\nabla\varphi \cdot \nabla) |v|^2 \\
&= -s^3 \int_{\Omega} |\nabla\varphi|^2 (\operatorname{div}(|v|^2 \nabla\varphi) - \Delta\varphi |v|^2) \\
&= s^3 \int_{\Omega} \nabla(|\nabla\varphi|^2) \cdot \nabla\varphi |v|^2 - s^3 \int_{\partial\Omega} \partial_n \varphi |\nabla\varphi|^2 |v|^2 + s^3 \int_{\Omega} (\Delta\varphi) |\nabla\varphi|^2 |v|^2 \\
&= s^3 \int_{\Omega} (2D^2\varphi(\nabla\varphi, \nabla\varphi) + \Delta\varphi |\nabla\varphi|^2) |v|^2 - s^3 \int_{\partial\Omega} \partial_n \varphi |\nabla\varphi|^2 |v|^2
\end{aligned}$$

- The term  $I_{22}$  is left unchanged

$$I_{22} = -2s^3 \int_{\Omega} (\Delta\varphi) |\nabla\varphi|^2 |v|^2.$$

Adding all the above terms and gathering all of them lead to the expected inequality. For the boundary terms, we make use of the following formulas

$$\begin{aligned}
|\nabla f|^2 &= |\partial_n f|^2 + |\nabla_{\parallel} f|^2, \\
(\nabla f \cdot \nabla g) &= \partial_n f \partial_n g + \nabla_{\parallel} f \cdot \nabla_{\parallel} g.
\end{aligned}$$

If one wants to get some interesting information from the above huge inequality, we see that first two (volumic) terms in the left-hand side needs to have the good sign, at least on some large enough part of the domain and/or the boundary. More precisely, we would like that, for some  $\beta > 0$  and some subsets  $K \subset \Omega$  and  $\Sigma \subset \partial\Omega$ , we have

$$2D^2\varphi + \Delta\varphi \text{ is uniformly } \beta\text{-coercive on } K, \quad (\text{IV.20})$$

$$2D^2\varphi(\nabla\varphi, \nabla\varphi) - \Delta\varphi |\nabla\varphi|^2 \geq \beta |\nabla\varphi|^2, \text{ on } K, \quad (\text{IV.21})$$

$$|\nabla\varphi| \geq \beta, \text{ on } K, \quad (\text{IV.22})$$

$$\partial_n \varphi \leq -\beta, \text{ on } \Sigma. \quad (\text{IV.23})$$

Let us point out that we cannot expect those assumptions to be valid all together with  $K = \Omega$  and  $\Sigma = \partial\Omega$ :

- Imagine that assumption (IV.22) holds with  $K = \Omega$ , then we know that  $\varphi$  has to achieve its maximum on the boundary  $\partial\Omega$  which proves that (IV.23) cannot hold for  $\Sigma = \partial\Omega$ .
- Imagine that (IV.20) holds for  $K = \Omega$ , then by taking the trace we deduce that

$$(d+2)\Delta\varphi \geq d\beta, \text{ in } \Omega,$$

and thus, by the Stokes formula,

$$\int_{\partial\Omega} \partial_n \varphi = \int_{\Omega} \Delta\varphi \geq \frac{d}{d+2} \beta |\Omega| > 0,$$

which prevents (IV.23) to be true with  $\Sigma = \partial\Omega$ .

Therefore, we will need to relax our requirements on  $K$  and  $\Sigma$  and that will lead to the observation terms in the final Carleman estimate.

More precisely, it is possible to build suitable weight functions as stated in the following result whose proof is postponed to Section 3.4.

### Lemma IV.3.29

1. **Boundary observation :** Let  $\Gamma \subset \partial\Omega$ . There exists a  $\beta > 0$  and a function  $\varphi$  satisfying (IV.20), (IV.21) and (IV.22) with  $K = \Omega$  and (IV.23) with  $\Sigma = \partial\Omega \setminus \Gamma$ .

Moreover, we can choose  $\varphi$  that satisfies

$$\nabla_{\parallel} \varphi = 0, \text{ on } \partial\Omega.$$

2. **Interior observation :** Let  $\omega \subset \Omega$  a non empty open subset of  $\Omega$ . There exists a  $\beta > 0$  and a function  $\varphi$  satisfying (IV.20), (IV.21) and (IV.22) with  $K = \Omega \setminus \omega$ , and (IV.23) with  $\Sigma = \partial\Omega$ .

Moreover, we can choose  $\varphi$  that satisfies

$$\nabla_{\parallel} \varphi = 0, \text{ on } \partial\Omega.$$

## 3.2 Proof of the boundary Carleman estimate

We may now prove Theorem IV.1.13. For the moment we shall not use the fact that  $v$  satisfies any boundary condition in order to identify the precise point where this property will be used.

We take a function  $\varphi$  associated with  $\Gamma$ , as in the first point of Lemma IV.3.29.

We apply the inequality of Proposition IV.3.28 with this particular function  $\varphi$  using its properties to get

$$\begin{aligned} & s^3 \beta^3 \int_{\Omega} |v|^2 + s\beta \int_{\Omega} |\nabla v|^2 + s^3 \beta^3 \int_{\partial\Omega \setminus \Gamma} |v|^2 + s\beta \int_{\partial\Omega \setminus \Gamma} |\partial_n v|^2 \\ & \leq \|\nabla\varphi\|_{\infty}^3 s^3 \int_{\Gamma} |v|^2 + s \|\nabla\varphi\|_{\infty} \int_{\Gamma} |\partial_n v|^2 + s \|\nabla\varphi\|_{\infty} \int_{\partial\Omega} |\nabla_{\parallel} v|^2 + 2s \|\Delta\varphi\|_{L^{\infty}} \int_{\partial\Omega} |v| |\partial_n v| \\ & \quad + 2 \|e^{s\varphi}(\Delta u)\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2 - 2s \int_{\Omega} v \nabla v \cdot \nabla \Delta\varphi + 2s^2 \int_{\Omega} |\Delta\varphi|^2 |v|^2. \end{aligned}$$

Adding the terms  $s^3 \beta^3 \int_{\Gamma} |v|^2$  and  $s\beta \int_{\Gamma} |\partial_n v|^2$  on both sides of the inequality gives

$$\begin{aligned} & s^3 \beta^3 \int_{\Omega} |v|^2 + s\beta \int_{\Omega} |\nabla v|^2 + s^3 \beta^3 \int_{\partial\Omega} |v|^2 + s\beta \int_{\partial\Omega} |\partial_n v|^2 \\ & \leq 2 \|\nabla\varphi\|_{\infty}^3 s^3 \int_{\Gamma} |v|^2 + 2s \|\nabla\varphi\|_{\infty} \int_{\Gamma} |\partial_n v|^2 + s \|\nabla\varphi\|_{\infty} \int_{\partial\Omega} |\nabla_{\parallel} v|^2 + 2s \|\Delta\varphi\|_{L^{\infty}} \int_{\partial\Omega} |v| |\partial_n v| \\ & \quad + 2 \|e^{s\varphi}(\Delta u)\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2 - 2s \int_{\Omega} v \nabla v \cdot \nabla \Delta\varphi + 2s^2 \int_{\Omega} |\Delta\varphi|^2 |v|^2. \end{aligned}$$

We see that the left-hand side terms give global information on  $v$  and  $\nabla v$  in  $\Omega$  and on  $v$  and  $\partial_n v$  on  $\partial\Omega$ .

The last two terms can be bounded as follows

$$\begin{aligned} -2s \int_{\Omega} v \nabla v \cdot \nabla \Delta \varphi + 2s^2 \int_{\Omega} |\Delta \varphi|^2 |v|^2 &\leq C_{\varphi} s \|v\|_{L^2} \|\nabla v\|_{L^2} + C_{\varphi} s^2 \|v\|_{L^2} \\ &\leq C_{\varphi} s^2 \|v\|_{L^2}^2 + C_{\varphi} \|\nabla v\|_{L^2}^2. \end{aligned}$$

We observe that the powers of  $s$  in those terms are less than the powers of  $s$  on similar terms in the left-hand side of the inequality. Therefore, there exists a  $s_0 > 0$  depending only on  $\varphi$ , such that those terms can be absorbed in the inequality. We get

$$\begin{aligned} s^3 \beta^3 \int_{\Omega} |v|^2 + s\beta \int_{\Omega} |\nabla v|^2 + s^3 \beta^3 \int_{\partial\Omega} |v|^2 + s\beta \int_{\partial\Omega} |\partial_n v|^2 \\ \leq C_{\varphi} s^3 \int_{\Gamma} |v|^2 + C_{\varphi} s \int_{\Gamma} |\partial_n v|^2 + C_{\varphi} s \int_{\partial\Omega} |\nabla_{\parallel} v|^2 + C_{\varphi} s \int_{\partial\Omega} |v| |\partial_n v| + 2 \|e^{s\varphi}(\Delta u)\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2. \end{aligned}$$

The fourth term in the right-hand side can be estimated by using the Cauchy-Schwarz and Young inequalities as follows

$$C_{\varphi} s \int_{\partial\Omega} |v| |\partial_n v| \leq \tilde{C}_{\varphi} s^2 \int_{\partial\Omega} |v|^2 + \tilde{C}_{\varphi} \int_{\partial\Omega} |\partial_n v|^2.$$

It follows (thanks to the low powers in  $s$  of those terms) that, for  $s$  large enough, we can absorb those contributions by the left-hand side terms in our inequality.

It remains the following inequality

$$\begin{aligned} s^3 \beta^3 \int_{\Omega} |v|^2 + s\beta \int_{\Omega} |\nabla v|^2 + s^3 \beta^3 \int_{\partial\Omega} |v|^2 + s\beta \int_{\partial\Omega} |\partial_n v|^2 \\ \leq C_{\varphi} s^3 \int_{\Gamma} |v|^2 + C_{\varphi} s \int_{\Gamma} |\partial_n v|^2 + C_{\varphi} s \int_{\partial\Omega} |\nabla_{\parallel} v|^2 + 2 \|e^{s\varphi}(\Delta u)\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2, \end{aligned}$$

which is valid for any function  $u$  without any assumption on the boundary conditions.

The only term which is not an observation term is the third one in the right-hand side. At that point, we need to consider the boundary condition for  $u$ . Indeed, if we assume that  $u = 0$  (or equivalently  $v = 0$ ) on  $\partial\Omega \setminus \bar{\Gamma}$ , we deduce that  $\nabla_{\parallel} v = 0$  on  $\partial\Omega \setminus \bar{\Gamma}$  and thus we have

$$\begin{aligned} s^3 \beta^3 \int_{\Omega} |v|^2 + s\beta \int_{\Omega} |\nabla v|^2 + s\beta \int_{\partial\Omega} |\partial_n v|^2 \\ \leq C_{\varphi} s^3 \int_{\Gamma} |v|^2 + C_{\varphi} s \int_{\Gamma} |\partial_n v|^2 + C_{\varphi} s \int_{\Gamma} |\nabla_{\parallel} v|^2 + 2 \|e^{s\varphi}(\Delta u)\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2, \end{aligned}$$

which is a first suitable Carleman estimate with observation on  $\Gamma$ .

The announced estimate is a particular case of the above inequality in the case where  $v = 0$  on the whole boundary  $\partial\Omega$  (and thus  $\nabla_{\parallel} v = 0$ )

$$s^3 \beta^3 \int_{\Omega} |v|^2 + s\beta \int_{\Omega} |\nabla v|^2 + s\beta \int_{\partial\Omega} |\partial_n v|^2 \leq C_{\varphi} s \int_{\Gamma} |\partial_n v|^2 + 2 \|e^{s\varphi}(\Delta u)\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2.$$

We just finally need to go back to the function  $u$ . We first note that

$$|v| = e^{s\varphi} |u|,$$

and

$$\nabla v = e^{s\varphi}(\nabla u) + (\nabla e^{s\varphi})u = e^{s\varphi}(\nabla u) + s(\nabla \varphi) \underbrace{e^{s\varphi} u}_{=v},$$

so that we have

$$s|e^{s\varphi} \nabla u|^2 \leq s|\nabla v|^2 + s^3 |\nabla \varphi|^2 |v|^2.$$

Moreover,

$$\partial_n v = e^{s\varphi}(\partial_n u) + u(\partial_n e^{s\varphi}) = e^{s\varphi}(\partial_n u),$$

since  $u = 0$  on the boundary. The claim is proved.

### 3.3 Proof of the distributed Carleman estimate

We may now prove Theorem IV.1.14. We take a function  $\varphi$  associated with  $\omega$ , as in the second point of Lemma IV.3.29.

We apply the inequality of Proposition IV.3.28 with this particular function  $\varphi$  using its properties to get, for any function  $v$  that vanishes on the boundary

$$\begin{aligned} \beta^3 s^3 \int_{\Omega \setminus \omega} |v|^2 + s\beta \int_{\Omega \setminus \omega} |\nabla v|^2 + s\beta \int_{\partial\Omega} |\partial_n v|^2 &\leq C_\varphi s^3 \int_\omega |v|^2 + C_\varphi s \int_\omega |\nabla v|^2 + 2\|e^{s\varphi}(\Delta u)\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2 \\ &\quad + 2s^2 \int_\Omega |\Delta\varphi|^2 |v|^2 - 2s \int_\Omega v \nabla v \cdot \nabla \Delta\varphi \end{aligned}$$

Adding the terms  $s^3\beta^3 \int_\omega |v|^2$  and  $s\beta \int_\omega |\nabla v|^2$  on both sides of the inequality gives (with another value of the constant  $C_\varphi$ )

$$\begin{aligned} \beta^3 s^3 \int_\Omega |v|^2 + s\beta \int_\Omega |\nabla v|^2 + s\beta \int_{\partial\Omega} |\partial_n v|^2 &\leq C_\varphi s^3 \int_\omega |v|^2 + C_\varphi s \int_\omega |\nabla v|^2 + 2\|e^{s\varphi}(\Delta u)\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2 \\ &\quad + 2s^2 \int_\Omega |\Delta\varphi|^2 |v|^2 - 2s \int_\Omega v \nabla v \cdot \nabla \Delta\varphi, \end{aligned}$$

and we can now absorb the last two terms as we did previously, by assuming that  $s \geq s_0$  for some  $s_0$  depending only on the weight function  $\varphi$ . We finally get

$$\beta^3 s^3 \int_\Omega |v|^2 + s\beta \int_\Omega |\nabla v|^2 + s\beta \int_{\partial\Omega} |\partial_n v|^2 \leq C_\varphi s^3 \int_\omega |v|^2 + C_\varphi s \int_\omega |\nabla v|^2 + 2\|e^{s\varphi}(\Delta u)\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2$$

This is actually a Carleman estimate with observation terms in  $\omega$  but we would like a little bit more, namely to obtain a similar estimate without observation terms containing derivatives of  $v$ . Let us show how to obtain such an estimate.

To begin with we consider a small non-empty observation domain  $\omega_0$  such that  $\overline{\omega_0} \subset \omega$  and we apply the above Carleman estimate to this new observation domain (this imply to use a weight function  $\varphi$  adapted to this new observation domain). It follows that

$$\beta^3 s^3 \int_\Omega |v|^2 + s\beta \int_\Omega |\nabla v|^2 + s\beta \int_{\partial\Omega} |\partial_n v|^2 \leq C s^3 \int_{\omega_0} |v|^2 + C s \int_{\omega_0} |\nabla v|^2 + 2\|e^{s\varphi}(\Delta u)\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2,$$

and we will now show how to get rid of the term  $\int_{\omega_0} |\nabla v|^2$ . Let  $\eta$  be a non-negative smooth function compactly supported in  $\omega$  and such that  $\eta = 1$  in  $\omega_0$ . We write by an integration by parts

$$s \int_{\omega_0} |\nabla v|^2 \leq s \int_\omega \eta |\nabla v|^2 = -s \int_\omega v \nabla v \cdot \nabla \eta - s \int_\omega \eta v (\Delta v).$$

Then we use the equation satisfied by  $v$  (see (IV.19)) that we recall here

$$\Delta v = e^{s\varphi}(\Delta u) + s(\Delta\varphi)v - s^2|\nabla\varphi|^2 v + 2s\nabla\varphi \cdot \nabla v,$$

to obtain

$$s \int_{\omega_0} |\nabla v|^2 \leq C_\varphi \left( s \int_\omega |v| |\nabla v| + s \int_\omega |v| e^{s\varphi} |\Delta u| + s^2 \int_\omega |v|^2 + s^3 \int_\omega |v|^2 + s^2 \int_\omega |v| |\nabla v| \right).$$

Since  $s \geq s_0$ , we deduce

$$s \int_{\omega_0} |\nabla v|^2 \leq C_\varphi \left( s^2 \int_\omega |v| |\nabla v| + s \int_\omega |v| e^{s\varphi} |\Delta u| + s^3 \int_\omega |v|^2 \right).$$

The last term is the observation term we would like to keep at the end. The second term can be bounded by the Cauchy-Schwarz and Young inequalities

$$s \int_{\omega} |v| e^{s\varphi} |\Delta u| \leq 2s^2 \int_{\omega} |v|^2 + 2 \int_{\omega} |e^{s\varphi} (\Delta u)|^2 \leq 2s^2 \int_{\omega} |v|^2 + 2 \|e^{s\varphi} (\Delta u)\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2.$$

Finally, we also use the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality and the refined Young inequality to bound the first term as follows

$$s^2 \int_{\omega} |v| |\nabla v| = \int_{\omega} s^{3/2} |v| s^{1/2} |\nabla v| \leq \frac{\varepsilon}{2} s \int_{\omega} |\nabla v|^2 + \frac{1}{2\varepsilon} s^3 \int_{\omega} |v|^2 \leq \frac{\varepsilon}{2} s \int_{\Omega} |\nabla v|^2 + \frac{1}{2\varepsilon} s^3 \int_{\omega} |v|^2,$$

so that we can take  $\varepsilon$  small enough (depending only on  $\varphi$ ) such that the term in  $\nabla v$  is absorbed by the corresponding term in the left-hand side of the inequality. The proof is complete.

### 3.4 Construction of the weight functions

Our goal is to prove Lemma IV.3.29. We begin by constructing a first function with particular properties.

#### Lemma IV.3.30

Let  $U$  be a bounded domain of  $\mathbb{R}^d$  of class  $C^2$  and  $V \subset U$  a non empty open subset of  $U$ . There exists a function  $\psi \in C^2(\bar{U})$  such that:

- $\psi = d(\cdot, \partial U)$  in a neighborhood of  $\partial U$ . In particular  $\psi = 0$  and  $\partial_n \psi = -1$  on  $\partial U$ .
- $\psi > 0$  in  $U$ .
- $\nabla \psi \neq 0$  in the compact  $K := \bar{U} \setminus V$ . In particular, there exists  $\alpha > 0$  such that

$$|\nabla \psi| \geq \alpha, \text{ in } K.$$

#### Proof :

Using the Morse lemma, we can find a function  $\tilde{\psi}$  that satisfies the first two properties and which has a finite number of critical points in  $U$ , let say  $x_1, \dots, x_n$ , see for instance [TW09]. Then we choose  $n$  distinct points  $y_1, \dots, y_n$  in  $V$ . There exists a diffeomorphism  $G$  from  $U$  into itself such that  $G(y_i) = x_i$  and such that  $G(y) = y$  in a neighborhood of  $\partial U$ . This can be done by considering the flow of a suitable compactly supported vector field. We easily check that  $\psi = \tilde{\psi} \circ G$  satisfies all the required properties. ■

We may now prove the second point of Lemma IV.3.29. We apply the previous lemma with  $U = \Omega$  and  $V = \omega$ . We set  $\varphi = e^{\lambda\psi}$  for  $\lambda \geq 0$ . and perform the following computations

$$\nabla \varphi = \lambda (\nabla \psi) \varphi,$$

$$D^2 \varphi = \lambda (D^2 \psi) \varphi + \lambda^2 (\nabla \psi) \otimes (\nabla \psi) \varphi,$$

$$\Delta \varphi = \lambda (\Delta \psi) \varphi + \lambda^2 |\nabla \psi|^2 \varphi.$$

- We first compute

$$2D^2 \varphi + \Delta \varphi = \lambda (2(D^2 \psi) + (\Delta \psi)) \varphi + \lambda^2 (2(\nabla \psi) \otimes (\nabla \psi) + |\nabla \psi|^2) \varphi,$$

and we see that for any  $\xi \in \mathbb{R}^d$

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{\varphi} (2D^2 \varphi + \Delta \varphi) \cdot (\xi, \xi) &\geq \lambda^2 (2|\nabla \psi \cdot \xi|^2 + |\nabla \psi|^2 |\xi|^2) - \lambda C_{\psi} |\xi|^2 \\ &\geq (\lambda^2 |\nabla \psi|^2 - \lambda C_{\psi}) |\xi|^2. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, since  $\nabla\psi$  does not vanish in  $K$ , we can choose  $\lambda$  large enough so that

$$\frac{1}{\varphi}(2D^2\varphi + \Delta\varphi) \cdot (\xi, \xi) \geq C\lambda^2|\nabla\psi|^2|\xi|^2, \text{ in } K,$$

and since  $\varphi \geq 1$ , we get

$$2D^2\varphi + \Delta\varphi \geq C\lambda^2|\nabla\psi|^2, \text{ in } K.$$

- We compute now

$$\begin{aligned} 2D^2\varphi \cdot (\nabla\varphi, \nabla\varphi) - \Delta\varphi|\nabla\varphi|^2 &= \lambda^2\varphi^2(2D^2\varphi \cdot (\nabla\psi, \nabla\psi) - \Delta\varphi|\nabla\psi|^2) \\ &= \lambda^2\varphi^2(\lambda^2|\nabla\psi|^4\varphi + 2\lambda D^2\psi \cdot (\nabla\psi, \nabla\psi)\varphi - \lambda(\Delta\psi)|\nabla\psi|^2\varphi) \\ &\geq \phi^3(\lambda^4\alpha^4 - C_\psi\lambda^3), \text{ in } K. \end{aligned}$$

Here also, for  $\lambda$  large enough we deduce that

$$2D^2\varphi \cdot (\nabla\varphi, \nabla\varphi) - \Delta\varphi|\nabla\varphi|^2 \geq \lambda^4\alpha^4, \text{ in } K.$$

Let us now prove the first point of Lemma IV.3.29. To this end, we consider a bounded open set  $U$  that contains  $\Omega$  and such that  $\partial\Omega \cap U \subset \Gamma$ . Then we choose some non empty open subset  $V$  such that  $\overline{V} \cap \overline{\Omega} = \emptyset$ .

We build a function  $\varphi$  related with this choice of  $U$  and  $V$ , and we easily see that its restriction to  $\Omega$  satisfies all the required properties since

$$\partial\Omega \setminus \Gamma \subset \partial U.$$

### 3.5 A Carleman estimate for augmented elliptic operators with special boundary conditions

For  $T^* > 0$ , we set  $Q = (0, T^*) \times \Omega$  be a *time-space* domain (even though the time variable here has nothing to do with the physical time of the initial problem). We consider the augmented elliptic operator

$$\Delta_{\tau,x} := \partial_\tau^2 + \Delta,$$

where the operator  $\Delta$  (as well as  $\nabla$ ) only concerns the space variables. The complete gradient operator will be denoted by

$$\nabla_{\tau,x} := (\partial_\tau, \nabla).$$

Note that all the analysis below still apply with  $\Delta$  replaced by the general elliptic operator  $-\mathcal{A}$ , with suitable regularity assumptions on  $\gamma$ .

#### Lemma IV.3.31

Let  $\omega \subset \Omega$  be a non-empty open subset of  $\Omega$ . There exists a weight function  $\varphi \in C^2(\overline{Q})$  that satisfies the assumptions (IV.20), (IV.21) and (IV.22) on the time-space domain  $Q$  and moreover

$$\begin{aligned} \partial_n\varphi &< 0, \text{ on } (0, T^*) \times \partial\Omega, \\ (-\partial_\tau\varphi) &\leq -\beta, \text{ on } \{0\} \times (\Omega \setminus \omega), \\ \partial_\tau\varphi &\leq -\beta, \text{ on } \{T^*\} \times \Omega, \\ \nabla_x\varphi(T^*, \cdot) &= 0, \text{ in } \Omega. \end{aligned}$$

We use this function  $\varphi$  in Proposition IV.3.28 on the domain  $Q$  for any function  $u$  that satisfies

$$\begin{cases} u(0, \cdot) = 0, & \text{in } \Omega, \\ u(\tau, \cdot) = 0, & \text{on } \partial\Omega \text{ for any } \tau \in (0, T^*). \end{cases}$$

Observe that  $u$  does not vanish for  $\tau = T^*$  so that  $u$  does not satisfy homogeneous boundary condition on  $\partial Q$ . This is why the Carleman estimate we will prove is different from the one developed above.

We obtain

$$\begin{aligned} s^3 \beta^3 \int_Q |v|^2 + s\beta \int_Q |\nabla_{\tau,x} v|^2 + s^3 \beta^3 \int_{\Omega} |v(T^*, \cdot)|^2 + \beta s \int_{\Omega} |\partial_{\tau} v(T^*, \cdot)|^2 + \beta s \int_{\Omega \setminus \omega} |\partial_{\tau} v(0, \cdot)|^2 \\ \leq -s \int_{\Omega} \partial_{\tau} \varphi(T^*, \cdot) |\nabla_x v(T^*, \cdot)|^2 + 2 \|e^{s\varphi}(\Delta_{\tau,x} u)\|_{L^2(Q)}^2 \\ - 2s \int_Q v \nabla_{\tau,x} v \cdot \nabla_{\tau,x} \Delta_{\tau,x} \varphi + 2s^2 \int_Q |\Delta_{\tau,x} \varphi|^2 |v|^2. \end{aligned}$$

The last two terms can be absorbed for  $s \geq s_0$  as before, and we can add the observation term at time  $\tau = 0$  on  $\omega$  on both sides of the inequality to obtain

$$\begin{aligned} s^3 \beta^3 \int_Q |v|^2 + s\beta \int_Q |\nabla_{\tau,x} v|^2 + s^3 \beta^3 \int_{\Omega} |v(T^*, \cdot)|^2 + \beta s \int_{\Omega} |\partial_{\tau} v(T^*, \cdot)|^2 + \beta s \int_{\Omega} |\partial_{\tau} v(0, \cdot)|^2 \\ \leq Cs \int_{\omega} |\partial_{\tau} v(0, \cdot)|^2 + Cs \int_{\Omega} |\nabla_x v(T^*, \cdot)|^2 + C \|e^{s\varphi}(\Delta_{\tau,x} u)\|_{L^2(Q)}^2. \end{aligned}$$

Coming back to the function  $u$ , and using that  $\varphi$  does not depend on  $x$  at  $\tau = T^*$ , we have finally obtained the following Carleman estimate.

**Proposition IV.3.32**

For any  $s \geq s_1$ , any  $u \in \mathcal{C}^2(\overline{Q})$  such that  $u(0, \cdot) = 0$  and  $u(t, \cdot) = 0$  on  $\partial\Omega$  for any  $t \in (0, T^*)$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} s^3 \int_Q |e^{s\varphi} u|^2 + s \int_Q |e^{s\varphi} \nabla_{\tau,x} u|^2 + s \int_{\Omega} |e^{s\varphi(0, \cdot)} \partial_{\tau} u(0, \cdot)|^2 \\ + s^3 e^{2s\varphi(T^*)} \int_{\Omega} |u(T^*, \cdot)|^2 + s e^{2s\varphi(T^*)} \int_{\Omega} |\partial_{\tau} u(T^*, \cdot)|^2 \\ \leq Cs \int_{\omega} |e^{s\varphi(0, \cdot)} \partial_{\tau} u(0, \cdot)|^2 + Cs e^{2s\varphi(T^*)} \int_{\Omega} |\nabla_x u(T^*, \cdot)|^2 + C \|e^{s\varphi}(\Delta_{\tau,x} u)\|_{L^2(Q)}^2. \end{aligned}$$

**Remark IV.3.33**

All the above elliptic Carleman estimates can be adapted to more general differential operators, like  $-\operatorname{div}(\gamma \nabla \cdot)$  for a smooth enough diffusion coefficient  $\gamma$  (and even for in some non-smooth cases).

## 4 The Fursikov-Imanuvilov approach

Contrary to the Lebeau-Robbiano strategy that amounts to build, step by step, a null-control for our problem, the method proposed by Fursikov and Imanuvilov in [F196] consists in directly proving the observability inequality on the adjoint problem.

### 4.1 Global parabolic Carleman estimates

We shall derive and use now a new kind of Carleman estimates. Those inequalities will directly concern the solutions of the parabolic operator under study.

The control time  $T > 0$  is fixed and we set  $\theta(t) = \frac{1}{t(T-t)}$ . We give the following result without proof (see [F196], [Cor07] or [TW09]) since it follows very similar lines as the ones of the proof of the elliptic Carleman estimate (but



with more technicalities).

#### Theorem IV.4.34

Let  $\omega$  be a non empty open subset of  $\Omega$ . There exists a function  $\varphi \in C^2(\overline{\Omega})$  such that

$$\sup_{\Omega} \varphi < 0, \text{ and } \inf_{\Omega \setminus \omega} |\nabla \varphi| > 0,$$

and for which we have the following property: for any  $d \in \mathbb{R}$ , there exists  $s_0 > 0$  and  $C > 0$  such that the following estimate holds for any  $s \geq s_0$  and any  $u \in C^2([0, T] \times \overline{\Omega})$  such that  $u = 0$  on  $(0, T) \times \partial\Omega$

$$\begin{aligned} \int_0^T \int_{\Omega} (s\theta)^d |e^{s\theta\varphi} u|^2 + \int_0^T \int_{\Omega} (s\theta)^{d-2} |e^{s\theta\varphi} \nabla u|^2 \\ \leq C \left( \int_0^T \int_{\omega} (s\theta)^d |e^{s\theta\varphi} u|^2 + \int_0^T \int_{\Omega} (s\theta)^{d-3} |e^{s\theta\varphi} (\partial_t u \pm \Delta u)|^2 \right). \end{aligned}$$

The sign  $\pm$  in the parabolic operator just means that the estimate holds true for both operators  $\partial_t - \Delta$  and  $\partial_t + \Delta$ .

As usual we can extend, by density, this estimate to less regular functions  $u$  as soon as all the terms in the inequality make sense.

#### Remark IV.4.35

A careful inspection of the proof shows that the same estimate holds with the following additional terms in the left-hand side

$$\int_0^T \int_{\Omega} (s\theta)^{d-4} |e^{s\theta\varphi} \partial_t u|^2 + \int_0^T \int_{\Omega} (s\theta)^{d-4} |e^{s\theta\varphi} \Delta u|^2.$$

Notice that, since  $\varphi$  is negative and  $\theta(t) \rightarrow \infty$  when  $t \rightarrow 0$  or  $t \rightarrow T$ , all the weights in this estimate are exponentially small near  $t = 0$  and  $t = T$ . This explains why the estimate holds without any assumption on the values of  $u$  at time  $t = 0$  or  $t = T$ .

## 4.2 Another proof of the null-controllability of the heat equation

With the above estimate at hand, we can directly prove the observability inequality we need.

#### Theorem IV.4.36

With the same assumption as before, there exists  $C > 0$  such that, for any solution  $q$  of the adjoint problem

$$-\partial_t q - \Delta q = 0,$$

with  $q(T) \in L^2(\Omega)$ , then we have

$$\|q(0)\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2 \leq C^2 \int_0^T \int_{\omega} |q(t, x)|^2 dt dx.$$

As a consequence, we have proved the null-controllability of the heat equation for any time  $T > 0$ .

**Proof :**

We choose  $d = 0$  and take some  $s \geq s_0$ ; then we apply the Carleman estimate above to the function  $q$ . Only keeping the first term in the left-hand side, we get

$$\int_0^T \int_{\Omega} |e^{s\theta\varphi} q|^2 \leq C \int_0^T \int_{\omega} |e^{s\theta\varphi} q|^2.$$

Since  $\varphi < 0$  and  $\theta > 0$ , we easily see that  $e^{s\theta\varphi} \leq 1$ . Moreover, we restrict the left-hand side integral to the time interval  $(T/4, 3T/4)$  to get

$$\int_{\frac{T}{4}}^{\frac{3T}{4}} \int_{\Omega} |e^{s\theta\varphi} q|^2 \leq C \int_0^T \int_{\omega} |q|^2.$$

On the interval  $(T/4, 3T/4)$  we have  $\theta(t) \leq 16/3T^2$ . We deduce that

$$e^{2s\varphi} \geq e^{32/3T^2 \inf \varphi}, \quad \text{on } (T/4, 3T/4) \times \Omega.$$

We have thus obtained for another value of  $C$

$$\int_{\frac{T}{4}}^{\frac{3T}{4}} \int_{\Omega} |q|^2 \leq C \int_0^T \int_{\omega} |q|^2.$$

We use now the dissipation property of the (backward) heat equation which gives

$$\|q(0)\|_{L^2}^2 \leq \|q(s)\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2, \quad \forall s \in (0, T).$$

By integration on  $(T/4, 3T/4)$  we get

$$\|q(0)\|_{L^2}^2 \leq \frac{2}{T} \int_{\frac{T}{4}}^{\frac{3T}{4}} \|q(s)\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2,$$

and the claim is proved by combining the last two inequalities. ■

## Chapter V

# Coupled parabolic equations

In this chapter, we would like to investigate controllability properties for coupled systems like (III.3) and (III.4). A particular attention will be paid to the case where  $\text{rank}B < n$ , that is when there are less controls than components in the system. We refer to the survey paper [AKBGBT11] even though many results were published on this topic after this survey.

### 1 Systems with as many controls as components

Let us first discuss the case where  $\text{rank}B = n$  (which implies that  $m \geq n$ ). We can remove some (useless) columns to  $B$  and assume that  $m = n$  and that  $B$  is invertible.

#### Theorem V.1.1

Let  $\omega$  be a non empty open subset of  $\Omega$  and  $T > 0$  and assume that  $B$  is a square invertible  $n \times n$  matrix. Then, System (III.3) is null-controllable at time  $T$ .

Notice that we do not make any structure assumption on the coupling matrix  $C(t, x)$ , we only assume that  $C \in L^\infty((0, T) \times \Omega)$ .

#### Proof :

We propose a proof based on the global parabolic Carleman estimate. The adjoint system associated with (III.3) reads

$$-\partial_t q - \Delta q + {}^t C(t, x)q = 0,$$

which can be also written, component-by-component for any  $i \in \{1, \dots, n\}$ , as follows

$$-\partial_t q_i - \Delta q_i = - \sum_j c_{ji}(t, x)q_j.$$

We apply to each  $q_i$  the Carleman estimate given in Theorem IV.4.34, with  $d = 0$ , the same value of  $s \geq s_0$  and, of course, the same weight function  $\varphi$ . It follows that

$$\int_0^T \int_\Omega |e^{s\theta\varphi} q_i|^2 \leq C \int_0^T \int_\omega |e^{s\theta\varphi} q_i|^2 + C \sum_j \int_0^T \int_\Omega (s\theta)^{-3} |e^{s\theta\varphi} q_j|^2.$$

We sum over  $i$  all those inequalities and we observe that on  $(0, T)$ , the function  $\theta^{-3}$  is bounded to deduce that, for all  $s \geq s_0$

$$\sum_i \int_0^T \int_\Omega |e^{s\theta\varphi} q_i|^2 \leq C \sum_i \int_0^T \int_\omega |e^{s\theta\varphi} q_i|^2 + \frac{C}{s^3} \sum_j \int_0^T \int_\Omega |e^{s\theta\varphi} q_j|^2.$$

We see that, for  $s$  large enough (depending only on the data !), the last term is absorbed by the left-hand side term. We deduce that

$$\sum_i \int_0^T \int_{\Omega} |e^{s\theta\varphi} q_i|^2 \leq C \sum_i \int_0^T \int_{\omega} |e^{s\theta\varphi} q_i|^2.$$

Using the same arguments as in Theorem IV.4.36, we arrive at

$$\sum_i \int_{\frac{T}{4}}^{\frac{3T}{4}} \int_{\Omega} |q_i|^2 \leq C \sum_i \int_0^T \int_{\omega} |q_i|^2.$$

Still denoting by  $|\cdot|$  the Euclidean norm in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ , this reads

$$\int_{\frac{T}{4}}^{\frac{3T}{4}} \int_{\Omega} |q|^2 \leq C \int_0^T \int_{\omega} |q|^2.$$

We use now the fact that  $B$  is an invertible matrix to deduce that for some other constant  $C$ , we have

$$\int_{\frac{T}{4}}^{\frac{3T}{4}} \int_{\Omega} |q|^2 \leq C \int_0^T \int_{\omega} |B^* q|^2. \quad (\text{V.1})$$

We would like now to use the dissipation argument. Because of the coupling terms we cannot simply use the estimate (IV.2) for the heat equation. Instead we will prove an energy estimate for the backward equation which implies that  $\|q(0)\|_{L^2(\Omega)}$  can be bounded, up to a multiplicative constant, by  $\|q(s)\|_{L^2(\Omega)}$  for any  $s \geq 0$ .

To this end we multiply the adjoint equation (in the sense of the Euclidean inner product of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ ) by  $q(t, x)$  and we integrate over  $\Omega$ . It follows that

$$-\int_{\Omega} (\partial_t q) \cdot q \, dx - \int_{\Omega} \Delta q \cdot q \, dx = -\int_{\Omega} (C^* q) \cdot q \, dx.$$

Integrating by parts the second term it follows that

$$-\frac{1}{2} \frac{d}{dt} \int_{\Omega} |q|^2 \, dx + \int_{\Omega} |\nabla q|^2 \, dx = -\int_{\Omega} (C^* q) \cdot q \, dx \leq \|C\|_{L^\infty} \int_{\Omega} |q|^2 \, dx,$$

in particular we have

$$-\frac{d}{dt} \|q(t)\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2 \leq 2\|C\|_{L^\infty} \|q(t)\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2.$$

Using the Gronwall inequality we deduce that

$$\|q(t)\|_{L^2(\Omega)} \leq e^{(s-t)\|C\|_{L^\infty}} \|q(s)\|_{L^2(\Omega)}, \quad \forall 0 \leq t < s \leq T,$$

and in particular

$$\|q(0)\|_{L^2(\Omega)} \leq e^{T\|C\|_{L^\infty}} \|q(s)\|_{L^2(\Omega)}, \quad \forall 0 \leq s \leq T.$$

Combining this inequality with (V.1) we obtain

$$\|q(0)\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2 \leq C \int_0^T \int_{\omega} |B^* q|^2,$$

and the observability inequality is proved as well as the null-controllability by duality. ■

## 2 Boundary versus distributed controllability

We first notice that, for the scalar problems we have studied before, the boundary and distributed controllability problems are in fact equivalent in some sense.

- Distributed controllability  $\Rightarrow$  Boundary controllability:

Imagine that you are able to prove the null-controllability for our system for any choice of  $\Omega$  and  $\omega$ , then we can prove the boundary controllability by considering an extended domain  $\tilde{\Omega}$  that contains  $\Omega$  and which is built in such a way that  $\tilde{\Omega} \cap \tilde{\Omega} \subset \Gamma_0$  (see Figure V.1). Then we choose a region  $\omega \subset \tilde{\Omega} \setminus \Omega$ .

We then extend our initial data  $y_0$  to the whole domain  $\tilde{\Omega}$  and apply the controllability result with control supported in  $\omega$  on the new extended problem, let  $\tilde{y} \in \mathcal{C}^0([0, T], L^2(\tilde{\Omega}))$  be the corresponding controlled solution. Since  $\omega \cap \Omega = \emptyset$ , we see that the restriction of  $\tilde{y}$  on  $\Omega$ ,  $y = \tilde{y}|_{\Omega}$  satisfies the heat equation (without source term) in  $\Omega$ . Moreover, since  $\tilde{y}$  vanishes on  $\partial\tilde{\Omega}$  we see in particular that  $y$  vanishes on  $\partial\Omega \setminus \Gamma_0$  by construction of the extended domain  $\tilde{\Omega}$ .

It remains to set  $v = \tilde{y}|_{\Gamma_0}$  in the trace sense, which is an element of  $L^2(0, T; H^{\frac{1}{2}}(\Gamma_0))$  which is an admissible boundary control for the original problem.

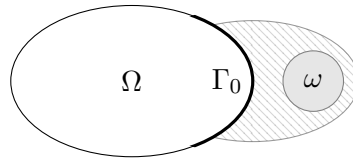


Figure V.1: Distributed controllability implies boundary controllability

- Boundary controllability  $\Rightarrow$  Distributed controllability:

A similar reasoning shows that the converse implication is true, see Figure V.2.

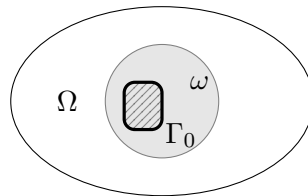


Figure V.2: Boundary controllability implies distributed controllability

The same arguments show that boundary and distributed controllability are equivalent problems in the case where  $m = \text{rank}B = n$ .

However, in the sequel of this chapter we shall consider coupled parabolic systems with less controls than components in the system  $m < n$ . One can easily see that, in this case, the above reasoning does not hold anymore and in fact we will see that the boundary and distributed controllability systems may really present different behaviors.

## 3 Distributed control problems

### 3.1 Constant coefficient systems with less controls than equations

In this section we assume that  $C(t, x)$  is a constant matrix  $C$ , that  $m = \text{rank}B < n$ .

#### Proposition V.3.2

*A necessary condition for the null- or approximate- controllability for (III.3) is that the pair  $(C, B)$  is controllable.*

**Proof :**

Let  $y$  be any solution of (III.3) and  $\phi_k$  an eigenfunction of the Laplace operator. We deduce that  $y_k(t) = \langle y(t), \phi_k \rangle_{L^2} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , solves the following equation

$$\frac{d}{dt}y_k + \lambda_k y_k + C y_k = B v_k(t), \quad (\text{V.2})$$

where  $v_k(t) = \langle v(t, \cdot), 1_\omega \phi_k \rangle_{L^2} \in \mathbb{R}^m$ . Then, the controllability of (III.3) implies the one of (V.2), which itself implies that the pair  $(C + \lambda_k \text{Id}, B)$  is controllable and so is the pair  $(C, B)$ . ■

**Theorem V.3.3**

*Under the above assumptions and if we assume that the pair  $(C, B)$  is controllable, then the system (III.3) is approximately controllable for any time  $T > 0$ .*

**Proof :**

The adjoint system reads

$$-\partial_t q - \Delta q + C^* q = 0.$$

The eigenvalues and eigenfunctions of  $-\Delta + C^*$  are given respectively by

$$\theta_{k,i} = \lambda_k + \mu_i, \quad \Phi_{k,i}(x) = \phi_k(x) \Phi_i,$$

where  $\mu_i$  and  $\Phi_i \in \mathbb{C}^n$  are the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of the matrix  $C^*$ . Observe that it can happen a resonance phenomenon

$$\theta_{k,i} = \theta_{k',i'}, \quad \text{with } k \neq k'.$$

Therefore, the eigenfunctions can be written

$$\Phi_\lambda(x) = \sum_{\substack{k,i \\ \text{with } \theta_{k,i}=\lambda}} a_{k,i} \phi_k(x) \Phi_i,$$

and when we apply the observation operator  $\mathcal{B}^* = 1_\omega B^*$ , we obtain

$$\mathcal{B}^* \Phi_\lambda = \sum_{\substack{k,i \\ \text{with } \theta_{k,i}=\lambda}} a_{k,i} 1_\omega(x) \phi_k(x) B^* \Phi_i.$$

Since the eigenfunctions  $\phi_k$  are linearly independent in  $L^2(\omega)$  (see for instance the Lebeau-Robbiano spectral inequality), we deduce that  $\mathcal{B}^* \Phi_\lambda = 0$  if and only if

$$\forall k, \quad B^* \left( \sum_{i \text{ s.t. } \mu_i = \lambda - \lambda_k} a_{k,i} \Phi_i \right) = 0.$$

Observe that the sum in this formula gives an eigenvector of  $C^*$ . Since the pair  $(B, C)$  is controllable, the (finite dimensional) Fattorini-Hautus test leads to  $a_{k,i} = 0$  for any  $k, i$  and thus  $\Phi_\lambda = 0$ .

It follows that our adjoint system satisfies the (infinite dimensional) Fattorini-Hautus test and then we deduce the approximate controllability of the system. ■

Actually, a stronger result can be obtained by using Carleman estimates.

**Theorem V.3.4**

*Under the above assumptions the system (III.3) is null-controllable for any time  $T > 0$ .*

**Proof :**

To simplify a little bit the proof we assume that  $n = 2$  and  $m = 1$ ; however the same proof easily extends to the general case.

Let us introduce the Kalman matrix  $K = (B, CB)$  and we perform the change of variable  $y = Kz$  to obtain

$$K \partial_t z - K \Delta z + CKz = 1_\omega Bv,$$

Since  $K$  is invertible and  $KC = \tilde{C}Z$  and  $B = K\tilde{B}$ , with

$$\tilde{C} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & c_{12} \\ 1 & c_{22} \end{pmatrix}, \quad \tilde{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix},$$

the system is transformed into a *cascade system*

$$\partial_t z - \Delta z + \tilde{C}z = 1_\omega \tilde{B}v,$$

that we write

$$\begin{cases} \partial_t z_1 - \Delta z_1 + c_{12} z_2 = 1_\omega v, \\ \partial_t z_2 - \Delta z_2 + z_1 + c_{22} z_2 = 0. \end{cases}$$

The corresponding adjoint system is

$$\begin{cases} -\partial_t q_1 - \Delta q_1 + q_2 = 0, \\ -\partial_t q_2 - \Delta q_2 + c_{12} q_1 + c_{22} q_2 = 0, \end{cases}$$

and the observation operator is  $\mathcal{B}^* = 1_\omega B^* = 1_\omega \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$ , which is nothing but the operator that takes the restriction on  $\omega$  to the **first** component of the adjoint state.

We notice that the approximate observability is clear from the elliptic Carleman estimate.

In other words, the observability inequality we need to prove for this adjoint system is

$$\|q_1(0)\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2 + \|q_2(0)\|_{L^2(\Omega)}^2 = \|q(0)\|_{L^2}^2 \leq C \int_0^T \int_\omega |q_1|^2.$$

As we have seen before, we already know how to prove the same inequality but with an other observation term on  $\omega$  involving the term  $q_2$  but here we do not want this term in the inequality. The only way to get rid of this term is to express  $q_2$  as a function of  $q_1$  by using the first equation  $q_2 = \partial_t q_1 + \Delta q_1$ . However, this will make appear high derivatives of  $q_1$  that are not allowed.

We thus need to come back at the Carleman estimate level. To simplify the computations, we define the quantities

$$J(d, f, U) := \int_0^T \int_U (s\theta)^d \left| e^{s\theta\varphi} f \right|^2.$$

With those notation, we write the parabolic Carleman estimate for  $q_1$  with  $d = d_1$  and for  $q_2$  with another value  $d = d_2$ . Moreover, we will take into account some of the terms allowed by Remark IV.4.35. For  $q_1$  we get

$$J(d_1, q_1, \Omega) + J(d_1 - 2, \nabla q_1, \Omega) \leq CJ(d_1, q_1, \omega) + CJ(d_1 - 3, \partial_t q_1 + \Delta q_1, \Omega),$$

and for  $q_2$

$$\begin{aligned} J(d_2, q_2, \Omega) + J(d_2 - 2, \nabla q_2, \Omega) + J(d_2 - 4, \partial_t q_2, \Omega) + J(d_2 - 4, \Delta q_2, \Omega) \\ \leq CJ(d_2, q_2, \omega) + CJ(d_2 - 3, \partial_t q_2 + \Delta q_2, \Omega), \end{aligned}$$

We use now the equations satisfied by  $q_1$  and  $q_2$ , to get

$$J(d_1, q_1, \Omega) + J(d_1 - 2, \nabla q_1, \Omega) \leq CJ(d_1, q_1, \omega) + CJ(d_1 - 3, q_2, \Omega), \quad (\text{V.3})$$

$$\begin{aligned}
& J(d_2, q_2, \Omega) + J(d_2 - 2, \nabla q_2, \Omega) + J(d_2 - 4, \partial_t q_2, \Omega) + J(d_2 - 4, \Delta q_2, \Omega) \\
& \leq C J(d_2, q_2, \omega) + C J(d_2 - 3, q_1, \Omega) + C J(d_2 - 3, q_2, \Omega), \quad (\text{V.4})
\end{aligned}$$

In order to perform the following computations we choose now  $d_1 = 7$  and  $d_2 = 4$  and we add (V.3) that we multiply by some  $\varepsilon > 0$  and (V.4). We obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
& \varepsilon J(7, q_1, \Omega) + \varepsilon J(5, \nabla q_1, \Omega) + J(4, q_2, \Omega) + J(2, \nabla q_2, \Omega) + J(0, \partial_t q_2, \Omega) + J(0, \Delta q_2, \Omega) \\
& \leq C \varepsilon J(7, q_1, \omega) + C \varepsilon J(4, q_2, \Omega) + C J(4, q_2, \omega) + C J(1, q_1, \Omega) + C J(1, q_2, \Omega).
\end{aligned}$$

By choosing  $\varepsilon > 0$  small enough (depending only on the data) we can absorb the second term in the right-hand side by the third one of the left-hand side. This value of  $\varepsilon$  being now fixed, we will not make it appear in the sequel. Moreover, we use that

$$\begin{aligned}
(s\theta)^1 &= (s\theta)^4 (s\theta)^{-3} \leq \frac{C}{s^3} (s\theta)^4, \\
(s\theta)^1 &= (s\theta)^7 (s\theta)^{-6} \leq \frac{C}{s^6} (s\theta)^7,
\end{aligned}$$

to say that, for a well chosen  $s_1$  (depending only on the data), and any  $s \geq s_1$ , we can absorb the last two terms in the right-hand side by the first and third of the left-hand side.

To sum up, we have now the following estimate

$$\begin{aligned}
& J(7, q_1, \Omega) + J(5, \nabla q_1, \Omega) + J(4, q_2, \Omega) + J(2, \nabla q_2, \Omega) + J(0, \partial_t q_2, \Omega) + J(0, \Delta q_2, \Omega) \\
& \leq C J(7, q_1, \omega) + C J(4, q_2, \omega).
\end{aligned}$$

We still have two observation terms and we would like to get rid of the one in  $q_2$ . It seems that we do not have made great progresses compared to the estimate obtained in Section 1. However, the additional term in the left-hand side, as well as the different powers of  $(s\theta)$  in both terms is a real progress.

First of all we replace the observation set  $\omega$  in the above estimate by a smaller one  $\omega_0$  (such that  $\overline{\omega_0} \subset \omega$ ). This requires of course to consider a slightly different weight function but we do not change the notation. We consider now a function  $\eta$  compactly supported in  $\omega$  and such that  $0 \leq \eta \leq 1$  and  $\eta = 1$  in  $\omega_0$ . It follows, by using the first equation of the system that

$$\begin{aligned}
J(4, q_2, \omega_0) &= \int_0^T \int_{\omega_0} (s\theta)^4 \left| e^{s\theta\varphi} q_2 \right|^2 \\
&\leq \int_0^T \int_{\omega} \eta (s\theta)^4 \left| e^{s\theta\varphi} q_2 \right|^2 \\
&= \int_0^T \int_{\omega} \eta (s\theta)^4 e^{2s\theta\varphi} q_2 (\partial_t q_1 + \Delta q_1).
\end{aligned}$$

We evaluate now the term (referred to as  $I_1$ ) in  $\partial_t q_1$  and the one (referred to as  $I_2$ ) in  $\Delta q_1$  independently.

- In the term  $I_1$ , we perform an integration by parts in time (observing that there is no boundary term since the weight  $e^{2s\theta\varphi}$  is exponentially flat in 0 and  $T$ ).

$$I_1 = - \int_0^T \int_{\omega} \eta (s\theta)^4 e^{2s\theta\varphi} (\partial_t q_2) q_1 - \int_0^T \int_{\omega} \eta s^4 \theta^3 (4\theta' + 2s\theta\theta'\varphi) e^{2s\theta\varphi} q_2 q_1.$$

Using that  $\theta' \leq C\theta^2$ , and the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality (with a suitable repartition of the weights  $(s\theta)^\bullet$  in both terms), we get (for  $s \geq 1$ )

$$\begin{aligned}
I_1 &\leq \int_0^T \int_{\omega} \eta (s\theta)^4 e^{2s\theta\varphi} |q_1 \partial_t q_2| + C \int_0^T \int_{\omega} \eta (s\theta)^6 e^{2s\theta\varphi} |q_2 q_1| \\
&\leq C J(0, \partial_t q_2, \Omega)^{\frac{1}{2}} J(8, q_1, \omega)^{\frac{1}{2}} + C J(4, q_2, \Omega)^{\frac{1}{2}} J(8, q_1, \omega)^{\frac{1}{2}}.
\end{aligned}$$

Observe that we have mentioned  $\Omega$  instead of  $\omega$  in the terms concerning  $q_2$  since we actually don't care that there are supported in  $\omega$  (we will absorb them by left-hand side terms of the estimate). However, it is crucial that the terms in  $q_1$  are localised in  $\omega$ ; those will contribute to the observation term at the end.



- In the term  $I_2$  we perform three successive integrations by parts in space (without boundary terms since  $\eta$  is compactly supported), in order to make all the derivatives apply on  $q_2$  instead of  $q_1$ . It follows

$$\begin{aligned}
I_2 &= - \int_0^T \int_{\omega} \eta(s\theta)^4 e^{2s\theta\varphi} \nabla q_2 \cdot \nabla q_1 - \int_0^T \int_{\omega} (s\theta)^4 e^{2s\theta\varphi} q_2 (\nabla \eta + 2s\theta \nabla \varphi) \cdot \nabla q_1 \\
&= \int_0^T \int_{\omega} \eta(s\theta)^4 e^{2s\theta\varphi} (\Delta q_2) q_1 + \int_0^T \int_{\omega} (s\theta)^4 e^{2s\theta\varphi} q_1 (\nabla \eta + 2s\theta \nabla \varphi) \cdot \nabla q_2 \\
&\quad + \int_0^T \int_{\omega} (s\theta)^4 e^{2s\theta\varphi} \nabla q_2 \cdot (\nabla \eta + 2s\theta \nabla \varphi) q_1 \\
&\quad + \int_0^T \int_{\omega} (s\theta)^4 e^{2s\theta\varphi} (\Delta \eta + 2s\theta \Delta \varphi + 2s\theta \nabla \varphi \cdot \nabla \eta + 4s^2 \theta^2 |\nabla \varphi|^2) q_2 q_1 \\
&\leq C \int_0^T \int_{\omega} (s\theta)^4 e^{2s\theta\varphi} |\Delta q_2| |q_1| + C \int_0^T \int_{\omega} (s\theta)^5 e^{2s\theta\varphi} |q_1| |\nabla q_2| + C \int_0^T \int_{\omega} (s\theta)^6 e^{2s\theta\varphi} |q_1| |q_2| \\
&\leq C J(0, \Delta q_2, \Omega)^{\frac{1}{2}} J(8, q_1, \omega)^{\frac{1}{2}} + C J(2, \nabla q_2, \Omega)^{\frac{1}{2}} J(8, q_1, \omega)^{\frac{1}{2}} + C J(4, q_2, \Omega)^{\frac{1}{2}} J(8, q_1, \omega)^{\frac{1}{2}}.
\end{aligned}$$

We gather the bound on  $I_1$  and the one on  $I_2$  and we use Young's inequality to obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
J(7, q_1, \Omega) + J(5, \nabla q_1, \Omega) + J(4, q_2, \Omega) + J(2, \nabla q_2, \Omega) + J(0, \partial_t q_2, \Omega) + J(0, \Delta q_2, \Omega) \\
\leq C J(7, q_1, \omega) + C J(8, q_1, \omega).
\end{aligned}$$

We finally obtained an estimate with a unique local observation term in  $q_1$

$$J(7, q_1, \Omega) + J(5, \nabla q_1, \Omega) + J(4, q_2, \Omega) + J(2, \nabla q_2, \Omega) + J(0, \partial_t q_2, \Omega) + J(0, \Delta q_2, \Omega) \leq C J(8, q_1, \omega).$$

We retain from this inequality only the terms in  $q_1$  and  $q_2$

$$J(7, q_1, \Omega) + J(4, q_2, \Omega) \leq C J(8, q_1, \omega),$$

from which the observability inequality can be proved the same way as before, by using dissipation estimates on  $q$ . ■

### 3.2 Variable coefficient cascade systems - The good case

In the case where the coupling coefficients in the system depend on  $x$ , we will see that the controllability properties of the system may be quite different.

If we assume that the *important* coupling coefficients do not identically vanish inside the control domain  $\omega$ , the analysis is simpler. More precisely, as an example, we consider the following  $2 \times 2$  system

$$\begin{cases} \partial_t z_1 - \Delta z_1 + c_{11}(x)z_1 + c_{12}(x)z_2 &= 1_{\omega} v, \\ \partial_t z_2 - \Delta z_2 + c_{21}(x)z_1 + c_{22}(x)z_2 &= 0, \end{cases} \quad (\text{V.5})$$

and we assume that  $c_{21}$  does not identically vanish in  $\omega$ : more precisely, there exists a non-empty  $\omega_0 \subset \omega$  such that  $\inf_{\omega_0} |c_{21}| > 0$ .

Using similar techniques as in the scalar case, based on elliptic Carleman estimates, we can prove the following result.

#### Proposition V.3.5

*Under the above assumptions, the system (V.5) is approximately controllable for any time  $T > 0$ .*

In fact the following, much stronger, result holds.

#### Proposition V.3.6

*With the same assumptions as before, the system (V.5) is null-controllable at any time  $T > 0$  (even if we allow the coefficients  $c_{ij}$  to depend on time).*

**Proof :**

The strategy we used in Section 1 can be applied exactly in the same way for such variable coefficients cascade systems. The only point is to be able to express  $q_2$  as a function of  $q_1$  in  $\omega_0$  by writing

$$q_2 = \frac{1}{c_{21}} \left( \partial_t q_1 + \Delta q_1 - c_{11} q_1 \right).$$

Details are left to the reader. ■

**3.3 Variable coefficient cascade systems - The not so good case**

In this section we will consider particular cascade systems for which the coupling terms do not intersect the control region.

$$\begin{cases} \partial_t y + \mathcal{A}y + C(x)y = \mathbf{1}_\omega Bv, & \text{in } \Omega \\ y = 0, & \text{on } \partial\Omega, \end{cases} \quad (\text{V.6})$$

with

$$B = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \text{ and } C(x) = 0, \text{ in } \omega.$$

It is clear that the strategies relying on Carleman estimates are not usable in such a case since we will not be able to remove the unwanted observation term at the end.

The general analysis of such systems (in particular in higher dimensions) remains an open problem at that time. We will concentrate here on the case of the  $2 \times 2$  cascade system for which

$$C(x) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ c_{21}(x) & 0 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (\text{V.7})$$

**3.3.1 Approximate controllability in any dimension**

By using the Fattorini-Hautus test, we know that the study of the approximate controllability amounts at analysing the eigenfunctions of the vectorial operator

$$\mathcal{L}^* = \mathcal{A}^* + C(x)^*,$$

and to check whether or not they belong to the kernel of  $\mathcal{B}^* = \mathbf{1}_\omega B^*$ .

In any dimension, we have a sufficient approximate controllability condition which is the following.

**Theorem V.3.7**

*Assume that  $c_{21}$  is continuous not identically zero and that  $c_{21} \geq 0$ , then the  $2 \times 2$  system (V.6) with  $C$  given by (V.7) is approximately controllable at any time  $T > 0$ .*

**Proof :**

Let us compute the eigenfunctions of the operator. They satisfy the equations

$$\begin{cases} -\Delta q_1 + c_{21}(x)q_2 & = \lambda q_1, \\ -\Delta q_2 & = \lambda q_2. \end{cases}$$

If  $q_2 \neq 0$ , then we necessarily have  $\lambda = \lambda_k$  for some  $k$  and  $q_2 = \phi_k$  (up to a multiplicative constant). It follows that  $q_1$  solves

$$-\Delta q_1 + c_{21}(x)\phi_k = \lambda_k q_1.$$

Multiplying this equation by  $\phi_k$  and integrating over  $\Omega$  leads to

$$\int_{\Omega} c_{21} |\phi_k|^2 dx = 0.$$

The sign assumption on  $c_{21}$  implies that  $\phi_k$  has to identically vanish on some open subset of  $\Omega$ . This is not possible (by using the elliptic Carleman estimate for instance).

We have thus proved that  $q_2$  is identically 0. From the first equation, we deduce that  $q_1 = \phi_k$  and  $\lambda = \lambda_k$  and  $\mathcal{B}^* q = 1_{\omega} q_1 = 1_{\omega} \phi_k \neq 0$ . From the Fattorini-Hautus test, the claim is proved. ■

### 3.3.2 Approximate controllability in 1D

Let us give more precise results in the 1D case (see [BO14]).

**General analysis.** Let  $\lambda$  be an eigenvalue of  $\mathcal{L}^*$  and  $q = (q_1, q_2)$  the corresponding eigenfunction. The equations they satisfy are

$$\begin{cases} \mathcal{A}q_1 + c_{12}q_2 = \lambda q_1, \\ \mathcal{A}q_2 = \lambda q_2, \end{cases}$$

- Case 1 :  $q_2 = 0$ , then the first equation gives  $\lambda = \lambda_k$  for some  $k$  and  $q_1 = \alpha \phi_k$ ,  $\alpha \neq 0$ . It follows that

$$\mathcal{B}^* q = 1_{\omega} q_1 = \alpha 1_{\omega} \phi_k,$$

and this cannot vanish (see IV.1.3).

- Case 2:  $q_2 \neq 0$  then the second equation gives  $\lambda = \lambda_k$  for some  $k$  and  $q_2 = \alpha \phi_k$ ,  $\alpha \neq 0$ . The equation for  $q_1$  gives

$$\mathcal{A}q_1 - \lambda_k q_1 = \alpha c_{12} \phi_k. \quad (\text{V.8})$$

A necessary and sufficient condition for such a  $q_1$  to exist is

$$\int_{\Omega} c_{12} |\phi_k|^2 dx = 0. \quad (\text{V.9})$$

If this condition does not hold, then this case cannot occur and the system is approximately controllable. Assume now that (V.9) holds, then the set of solutions of (V.8) is a one dimensional affine space. It means that  $q_1$  necessarily writes

$$q_1 = \bar{q}_1 + \beta \phi_k,$$

for some particular solution  $\bar{q}_1$  of (V.8) (and satisfying of course the boundary conditions) and for some  $\beta \in \mathbb{R}$ .

The question we have to answer now is whether or not such a function  $q_1$  may identically vanish on  $\omega$ . Assume that such a function exists and let  $[a, b]$  be a connected component of  $\Omega \setminus \omega$ . We multiply (V.8) and we integrate on  $[a, b]$  to get

$$\alpha \int_a^b c_{12} |\phi_k|^2 dx = -[\gamma q_1' \phi_k]_a^b + [\gamma q_1 \phi_k']_a^b.$$

- We observe that, if  $a \in \Omega$  then  $a \in \bar{\omega}$  and since we have assumed that  $q_1 = 0$  on  $\omega$ , we deduce that  $q_1(a) = q_1'(a) = 0$ . The same holds of course for the point  $b$ .
- If  $a \in \partial\Omega$ , then  $\phi_k(a) = 0$  and  $q_1(a) = 0$ .

In both cases, all the terms in the integration by parts vanish so that we finally got the first condition

$$\int_a^b c_{12} |\phi_k|^2 dx = 0. \quad (\text{V.10})$$

Actually, if the interval  $[a, b]$  does not touch the boundary of  $\Omega$  we can make the same computations with  $\phi_k$  replaced by  $\psi_k$  another independent solution of  $\mathcal{A}\psi_k = \lambda_k \psi_k$ . It follows the second necessary condition

$$\int_a^b c_{12} \phi_k \psi_k dx = 0. \quad (\text{V.11})$$

The conditions we found above are in fact necessary and sufficient conditions. Let us define

$$M_k(f, [a, b]) = \begin{pmatrix} \int_a^b f \phi_k \\ \int_a^b f \psi_k \end{pmatrix}, \text{ if } [a, b] \text{ does not touch the boundary,}$$

$$M_k(f, [a, b]) = \begin{pmatrix} \int_a^b f \phi_k \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \text{ if } [a, b] \text{ touches the boundary.}$$

### Theorem V.3.8

The  $2 \times 2$  cascade system (with  $c_{12}$  vanishing in  $\omega$ ) is approximately controllable if and only if, for any  $k \geq 0$ , there exists a connected component  $[a, b]$  of  $\Omega \setminus \omega$  such that

$$M_k(c_{12}\phi_k, [a, b]) \neq 0.$$

### Proof :

Assume that for some  $k$ , all the vectors  $M_k(c_{12}\phi_k, [a, b])$  vanish for all connected component  $[a, b]$  of  $\Omega$ . In particular we have  $\int_a^b c_{12}|\phi_k|^2 = 0$  for any such  $[a, b]$ . Finally since  $c_{12} = 0$  on  $\omega$ , we deduce that

$$\int_0^1 c_{12}|\phi_k|^2 dx = 0.$$

This condition ensures the existence of at least one solution  $\bar{q}_1$  of (V.8) and that all the solution can be written under the form

$$q_1 = \bar{q}_1 + \beta\phi_k, \quad \beta \in \mathbb{R}.$$

The question is now : can we find a particular value of  $\beta$  such that  $q_1 = 0$  in  $\omega$ . If this is the case, we have a non observable eigenfunction of our system and the approximate controllability fails.

We are going to fix  $\beta$  in such a way that, for some  $x_0 \in \bar{\omega}$ , we have  $q_1(x_0) = q_1'(x_0) = 0$ .

- If  $\bar{\omega} \cap \partial\Omega \neq \emptyset$ , then we can take  $x_0 \in \bar{\omega} \cap \partial\Omega$ . We immediately have  $q_1(x_0) = 0$  and  $q_1'(x_0) = \bar{q}_1'(x_0) + \beta\phi_k'(x_0)$ . Since  $\phi_k'(x_0)$  does not vanish we see that  $\beta$  can be chosen to ensure  $q_1'(x_0) = 0$ .
- If  $\bar{\omega} \cap \partial\Omega = \emptyset$ , we consider  $[0, b]$  the connected component of  $\bar{\Omega} \setminus \omega$  that contains 0. By assumption, we have

$$\int_0^b c_{12}|\phi_k|^2 = 0,$$

and since  $c_{12} = 0$  in  $\omega$ , we can find a  $\delta > 0$  small enough such that  $]b, b + \delta[ \subset \omega$  and  $\phi_k(b + \delta) \neq 0$ . We can then choose  $\beta$  such that

$$0 = \bar{q}_1(b + \delta) + \beta\phi_k(b + \delta) = q_1(b + \delta).$$

Finally, we have

$$\mathcal{A}q_1 - \lambda_k q_1 = \alpha c_{12}\phi_k, \text{ in } (0, b + \delta),$$

$$\int_0^{b+\delta} c_{12}|\phi_k|^2 = 0,$$

so that we can multiply the equation by  $\phi_k$  and integrate on  $(0, b + \delta)$  to find

$$\int_0^{b+\delta} (\mathcal{A}q_1 - \lambda_k q_1)\phi_k = 0,$$

and by integration by parts (using that  $q_1(0) = \phi_k(0) = q_1(b + \delta) = 0$ ) we get

$$0 = \gamma(b + \delta)q_1'(b + \delta)\phi_k(b + \delta).$$

Since  $\phi_k(b + \delta) \neq 0$ , we necessarily have  $q_1'(b + \delta) = 0$ . The point  $x_0 = b + \delta$  fulfills our requirements.

Let now  $x_1$  be another point in  $\omega$  with  $x_1 > x_0$  for instance (the other case being treated similarly). Since  $[x_0, x_1] \cap (\Omega \setminus \omega)$  is an union of connected components of  $\Omega \setminus \omega$  that does not touch the boundary, we deduce that

$$\int_{x_0}^{x_1} c_{12} |\phi_k|^2 = \int_{x_0}^{x_1} c_{12} \phi_k \psi_k = 0.$$

By integration by parts, we deduce that

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= -q_1'(x_1) \phi_k(x_1) + q_1(x_1) \phi_k'(x_1), \\ 0 &= -q_1'(x_1) \psi_k(x_1) + q_1(x_1) \psi_k'(x_1), \end{aligned}$$

and since

$$\begin{vmatrix} \phi_k(x_1) & \psi_k(x_1) \\ \phi_k'(x_1) & \psi_k'(x_1) \end{vmatrix} \neq 0,$$

we got  $q_1(x_1) = q_1'(x_1) = 0$  and the claim is proved.  $\blacksquare$

**Some examples.** Let us analyze some particular examples of such systems. We will see that many different situations can occur.

- Assume that  $c_{12} \geq 0$  (but not identically zero) then the system is approximately controllable. Indeed, in that case, the integrals  $\int_a^b c_{12} |\phi_k|^2$  cannot be all zero.
- We consider the set  $\mathcal{O} = (1/4, 3/4)$  and we take for some  $a \in \mathbb{R}$

$$c_{12}(x) = (x - a)1_{\mathcal{O}}(x).$$

- Subcase 1 : Assume that  $\omega \subset (3/4, 1)$ . The only connected component of  $\overline{\Omega \setminus \omega}$  that touches the coupling support  $\mathcal{O}$  contains  $(0, 3/4)$ . In that case we know that the system is approximately controllable if and only if

$$\int_{\mathcal{O}} c_{12} \phi_k^2 dx \neq 0.$$

A simple computation thus shows that

$$\text{the system is approximately controllable} \iff \alpha \notin \{\alpha_k\}_k,$$

where

$$\alpha_k = \frac{\int_{\mathcal{O}} x \phi_k^2}{\int_{\mathcal{O}} \phi_k^2}, \quad \forall k \geq 1.$$

- Subcase 2 : Assume now that  $\omega \cap (3/4, 1) \neq \emptyset$  and  $\omega \cap (0, 1/4) \neq \emptyset$ . If  $\alpha \notin \{\alpha_k\}_k$ , then it is clear that the system is approximately controllable from the previous analysis. However, since the concerned connected component of  $\Omega \setminus \omega$  does not touch the boundary of  $\Omega$ , we have to check whether or not we have

$$\int_{\mathcal{O}} c_{12} \phi_k \psi_k = 0.$$

This condition is not explicit in general but we can discuss a particular case where  $\mathcal{A} = -\partial_x^2$ . In this case  $\phi_k(x) = \sin(k\pi x)$  and  $\psi_k(x) = \cos(k\pi x)$  and we can check that  $\alpha_k = 1/2$  for any  $k$ .

It remains to compute, for  $\alpha = \alpha_k = 1/2$ ,

$$\int_{\mathcal{O}} c_{12} \phi_k \psi_k = \int_{1/4}^{3/4} (x - 1/2) \sin(k\pi x) \cos(k\pi x) = \begin{cases} \frac{-1}{8k\pi} (-1)^{k/2}, & \text{if } k \text{ is even,} \\ \frac{-1}{4k^2\pi^2} (-1)^{(k-1)/2}, & \text{if } k \text{ is odd.} \end{cases}$$

Since those quantities never vanish, we deduce that our system, for this choice of  $\omega$ , is always approximately controllable.

### 3.3.3 Null controllability in 1D

The main result in this direction proved in [KBGBdT16] is, in a simplified version, the following

#### Theorem V.3.9

Assume that  $c_{12} = 0$  in the control domain  $\omega$ . Then there exists a time  $T_0(c_{12}) \in [0, +\infty]$  such that

- For  $T > T_0(c_{12})$ , the system (V.6) with (V.7) is null-controllable.
- For  $T < T_0(c_{12})$ , the system (V.6) with (V.7) is not null-controllable.

Moreover, for any  $T^* \in [0, \infty]$ , there exists a coupling function  $c_{12}$  such that  $T_0(c_{12}) = T^*$ .

Note that in the above reference a more or less explicit formula for  $T_0(c_{12})$  is given.

The proof strategy is the following

- Compute the eigenelements of the operator  $\mathcal{L}^*$ . We find that the eigenfunctions are the

$$\begin{pmatrix} \phi_k \\ 0 \end{pmatrix},$$

with the associated generalized eigenfunctions given by

$$\begin{pmatrix} \psi_k \\ \phi_k \end{pmatrix},$$

for some explicit function  $\psi_k$ .

- Case  $T > T_0(c_{12})$  : the positive controllability result is proved by using the moments method.
- Case  $T < T_0(c_{12})$  : the negative controllability result is proved by showing that the observability inequality does not hold for some well-chosen final data  $q_T$  built as a combination of the above two (generalized) eigenfunctions of  $\mathcal{L}^*$ .

## 4 Boundary controllability results for 1D systems

We consider the following system in the 1D interval  $\Omega = (0, 1)$ .

$$\begin{cases} \partial_t y - \Delta y + Cy = 0, & \text{in } \Omega = (0, 1) \\ y = \mathbf{1}_{\{0\}} Bv, & \text{on } \partial\Omega. \end{cases} \quad (\text{V.12})$$

#### Proposition V.4.10

A necessary condition for the null- or approximate- controllability for (V.12) is that the pair  $(C, B)$  is controllable.

#### Proof :

Let  $y$  be any solution of (V.12) and  $\phi_k$  an eigenfunction of the Laplace operator. Then, by duality, we obtain that  $y_k(t) = \langle y(t), \phi_k \rangle_{L^2} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ , solves the following equation

$$\frac{d}{dt} y_k + \lambda_k y_k + C y_k = \pm \phi_k'(0) Bv(t). \quad (\text{V.13})$$

Then the null-controllability (resp. approximate controllability) of (V.12), implies the null-controllability (resp. approximate controllability) of the reduced system (V.13). It implies that the pair  $(C + \lambda_k \text{Id}, \phi'_k(0)B)$  is controllable and since  $\phi'_k(0) \neq 0$ , this gives that  $(C, B)$  is controllable. ■

#### Theorem V.4.11

Assume that  $m = 1 = \text{Rank} B$  (the general case can be studied similarly).

System (V.12) is approximately controllable at time  $T > 0$  if and only if the pair  $(C, B)$  is controllable and the following condition holds

$$\lambda_k + \mu_i = \lambda_{k'} + \mu_{i'} \implies k = k', \quad (\text{V.14})$$

for any  $k, k'$  and  $\mu_i, \mu_{i'} \in \text{Sp}(C^*)$ .

#### Proof :

The adjoint problem reads

$$-\partial_t q - \Delta q + C^* q = 0,$$

and we have already seen that the eigenfunctions associated with this system are have the form

$$\Phi_\lambda(x) = \sum_{\substack{k,i \\ \text{with } \theta_{k,i}=\lambda}} a_{k,i} \phi_k(x) \Phi_i.$$

When applying the observation operator  $\mathcal{B}^* = B^* \frac{\partial}{\partial x}|_{x=0}$  we obtain

$$\mathcal{B}^* \Phi_\lambda = \sum_{\substack{k,i \\ \text{with } \theta_{k,i}=\lambda}} a_{k,i} \phi'_k(0) B^* \Phi_i.$$

- Assume that Condition (V.14) hold. It implies that all the pairs  $(k, i)$  in the above sum corresponds to the same index  $k$ . It follows that

$$\mathcal{B}^* \Phi_\lambda = \phi'_k(0) B^* \left( \sum_{\substack{i \text{ s.t.} \\ \mu_i = \lambda - \lambda_k}} a_{k,i} \Phi_i \right),$$

and since the sum above is a combination of eigenvectors or  $C^*$  associated with the same eigenvalue, it is itself an eigenvector of  $C^*$ . The (finite dimensional) Fattorini-Hautus test, we deduce that  $\mathcal{B}^* \Phi_\lambda$  cannot be 0. This proves the approximate controllability of our system.

- Assume that (V.14) does not hold. There exist two different indices  $k_1 \neq k_2$  and two different  $i_1$  and  $i_2$  such that

$$\lambda_{k_1} + \mu_{i_1} = \lambda_{k_2} + \mu_{i_2}.$$

Consider now

$$\Phi(x) = \frac{\phi'_{k_2}(0)}{B^* \Phi_{i_1}} \phi_{k_1}(x) \Phi_{i_1} - \frac{\phi'_{k_1}(0)}{B^* \Phi_{i_2}} \phi_{k_2}(x) \Phi_{i_2},$$

which is well-defined since, by the Fattorini-Hautus test we have  $B^* \Phi_{i_p} \neq 0$  for  $p = 1, 2$ . By construction,  $\Phi$  is an eigenfunction of our adjoint operator  $\mathcal{A}^*$ . Moreover we have

$$\mathcal{B}^* \Phi = \frac{\phi'_{k_2}(0)}{B^* \Phi_{i_1}} \phi'_{k_1}(0) B^* \Phi_{i_1} - \frac{\phi'_{k_1}(0)}{B^* \Phi_{i_2}} \phi'_{k_2}(0) B^* \Phi_{i_2} = 0.$$

This shows that the Fattorini-Hautus test is not fulfilled by our system and thus it is not approximately controllable.

**Remark V.4.12**

Observe that Condition (V.14) automatically holds when  $C^*$  has only one eigenvalue, which is the case for instance when  $C$  is a Jordan block, that is to say when our parabolic system has a **cascade** structure.

Let us now study the null-controllability of (V.12). The usual Kalman matrix change of variable let us put the system in cascade form (observe that it is crucial here that the same diffusion operator appears in each equation).

To simplify the presentation we assume  $n = 2$  and  $m = 1$  and thus we consider the following cascade system

$$\begin{cases} \partial_t y_1 - \Delta y_1 = 0, & \text{in } \Omega = (0, 1) \\ \partial_t y_2 - \Delta y_2 + y_1 = 0, & \text{in } \Omega = (0, 1) \\ y(t, x = 1) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \text{ and } y(t, x = 0) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} v(t), \end{cases} \quad (\text{V.15})$$

with  $c_{21} \neq 0$ .

The adjoint problem reads

$$\begin{cases} -\partial_t q_1 - \Delta q_1 + q_2 = 0, & \text{in } \Omega = (0, 1) \\ -\partial_t q_2 - \Delta q_2 = 0, & \text{in } \Omega = (0, 1) \\ q(t, x = 1) = q(t, x = 0) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}. \end{cases}$$

Let us compute the eigenfunctions of the following operator

$$\begin{cases} -\Delta q_1 + q_2 = \lambda q_1, \\ -\Delta q_2 = \lambda q_2. \end{cases}$$

Multiplying the first equation by  $q_2$ , integrating over  $\Omega$ , and using the second equation we find that

$$\int_{\Omega} |q_2|^2 = 0,$$

which means that  $q_2 = 0$ . The first equation then reduces to  $-\Delta q_1 = \lambda q_1$  which proves that  $\lambda = \lambda_k$  and  $q_1 = \phi_k$  (up to a multiplicative factor).

We have found all the eigenvalues/eigenfunctions of our vectorial operator

$$\lambda_k, \Phi_k = \begin{pmatrix} \phi_k \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

However, those functions do not generate the whole state space  $(L^2(\Omega))^2$  because the second component is 0. We will look for generalized eigenfunctions by solving the problem

$$\begin{cases} -\Delta q_1 + q_2 = \lambda_k q_1 + \phi_k, \\ -\Delta q_2 = \lambda_k q_2. \end{cases}$$

The second equation shows that  $q_2 = \alpha \phi_k$  for some  $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$  and multiplying the first equation by  $q_2 - \phi_k$  shows that the only admissible value is  $\alpha = 1$ .

The solution for  $q_1$  is not unique (since we can add any multiple of  $\phi_k$ ) but we see that  $q_1 = 0$  is an admissible solution. Finally, we have found the generalized eigenfunction

$$\Psi_k = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ \phi_k \end{pmatrix}.$$



The family  $\{\Phi_k, \Psi_k\}_k$  is an Hilbert basis of  $(L^2(\Omega))^2$  made of (generalized) eigenfunctions of our operator  $-\Delta + C^*$ .

$$\begin{cases} e^{-tA^*} \Phi_k = e^{-t\lambda_k} \Phi_k, \\ e^{-tA^*} \Psi_k = e^{-t\lambda_k} (\Psi_k - t\Phi_k). \end{cases}$$

Moreover, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{B}^* \Phi_k &= \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \Big|_{x=0} B^* \Phi_k = \phi'_k(0), \\ \mathcal{B}^* \Psi_k &= \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \Big|_{x=0} B^* \Psi_k = 0. \end{aligned}$$

A function  $v$  is a control for our problem if and only if it satisfies the following moments equations

$$\begin{cases} e^{-T\lambda_k} \langle y_0, \Phi_k \rangle_E = \int_0^T v(s) e^{-\lambda_k(T-s)} \mathcal{B}^* \Phi_k ds \\ e^{-T\lambda_k} \langle y_0, \Psi_k - T\Phi_k \rangle_E = \int_0^T v(s) e^{-\lambda_k(T-s)} \mathcal{B}^* (\Psi_k - (T-s)\Phi_k) ds. \end{cases}$$

Those equations can be simplified as follows

$$\begin{cases} \frac{e^{-T\lambda_k}}{\phi'_k(0)} \langle y_{0,1}, \phi_k \rangle_{L^2} = \int_0^T v(s) e^{-\lambda_k(T-s)} ds, \\ \frac{e^{-T\lambda_k}}{-\phi'_k(0)} \left( \langle y_{0,1}, \phi_k \rangle_{L^2} - T \langle y_{0,2}, \phi_k \rangle_{L^2} \right) = \int_0^T v(s) (T-s) e^{-\lambda_k(T-s)} ds \end{cases}$$

Using the extension of our Theorem on biorthogonal families stated in Remark [IV.1.10](#), we can then formally define the following control

$$v(s) = \sum_{k \geq 1} \frac{e^{-T\lambda_k}}{\phi'_k(0)} \langle y_{0,1}, \phi_k \rangle_{L^2} q_{k,0}(s) + \sum_{k \geq 1} \frac{e^{-T\lambda_k}}{-\phi'_k(0)} \left( \langle y_{0,1}, \phi_k \rangle_{L^2} - T \langle y_{0,2}, \phi_k \rangle_{L^2} \right) q_{k,1}(s).$$

The estimates on the  $q_{k,j}$  let us justify the convergence of the series above in  $L^2(0, T)$  and concludes the proof of existence of a null-control for our coupled parabolic system.



## Appendix A

# Appendices

### 1 Non-autonomous linear ODEs. Resolvent

We consider a linear, non autonomous and homogeneous ODE of dimension  $n$  as follows

$$\begin{cases} y'(t) + A(t)y(t) = f(t), \\ y(0) = y_0, \end{cases} \quad (\text{I.1})$$

It can be proved that there exists a unique map  $(t, s) \in \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R} \mapsto R(t, s) \in M_n(\mathbb{R})$  called the resolvent that satisfies

$$\begin{cases} \frac{d}{dt}R(t, t_0) + A(t)R(t, t_0) = 0, \\ R(t_0, t_0) = \text{Id}. \end{cases}$$

This maps satisfies the group property

$$R(t_1, t_2)R(t_2, t_3) = R(t_1, t_3), \quad \forall t_1, t_2, t_3 \in \mathbb{R}.$$

With this definition, the unique solution to the problem (I.1), is given by the Duhamel formula

$$y(t) = R(t, 0)y_0 + \int_0^t R(t, s)f(s) ds.$$

#### Example I.1.1 (Autonomous case)

When  $A(t) = A$  does not depend on time, we can check that

$$R(t, s) = e^{-(t-s)A},$$

and the above formula becomes

$$y(t) = e^{-tA}y_0 + \int_0^t e^{-(t-s)A}f(s) ds.$$

### 2 Linear ODEs with integrable data

Consider the following system of ODEs, with  $A \in M_n(\mathbb{R})$  independent of time and  $f \in L^1(0, T, \mathbb{R}^n)$ ,

$$\begin{cases} y'(t) + Ay(t) = f(t), \\ y(0) = y_0, \end{cases}$$

The usual Cauchy theorem applies (with minor adaptation related to the fact that, because of the non regularity of  $f$ , the solution  $y$  may not be of class  $C^1$ ) and gives a unique solution  $y$ .

Let us prove that the linear solution map

$$\Phi : (y_0, f) \in \mathbb{R}^n \times L^1(0, T, \mathbb{R}^n) \mapsto y \in C^0([0, T], \mathbb{R}^n),$$

is continuous. The Duhamel formula gives

$$y(t) = e^{-tA}y_0 + \int_0^t e^{-(t-s)A}f(s) ds,$$

and by taking the norm, for a given  $t \in [0, T]$ , we get

$$\|y(t)\| \leq e^{t\|A\|}\|y_0\| + \int_0^t e^{(t-s)\|A\|}\|f(s)\| dt \leq C_T(\|y_0\| + \int_0^T \|f(s)\| ds).$$

Which proves that

$$\|y\|_{C^0([0, T], \mathbb{R}^n)} \leq C_T(\|y_0\| + \|f\|_{L^1(0, T, \mathbb{R}^n)}).$$

# Bibliography

- [ABM16] Damien Allonsius, Franck Boyer, and Morgan Morancey, *Spectral analysis of discrete elliptic operators and applications in control theory*, submitted (2016).
- [AKBGBT11] Farid Ammar-Khodja, Assia Benabdallah, Manuel González-Burgos, and Luz Teresa, *Recent results on the controllability of linear coupled parabolic problems: A survey*, *Mathematical Control and Related Fields* **1** (2011), no. 3, 267–306.
- [All07] Grégoire Allaire, *Numerical analysis and optimization*, Numerical Mathematics and Scientific Computation, Oxford University Press, Oxford, 2007, An introduction to mathematical modelling and numerical simulation, Translated from the French by Alan Craig. MR 2326223
- [BO14] Franck Boyer and Guillaume Olive, *Approximate controllability conditions for some linear 1D parabolic systems with space-dependent coefficients*, *Mathematical Control and Related Fields* **4** (2014), no. 3, 263–287.
- [Boy13] Franck Boyer, *On the penalised HUM approach and its applications to the numerical approximation of null-controls for parabolic problems*, *ESAIM: Proceedings* **41** (2013), 15–58.
- [Bre83] Haïm Brezis, *Analyse fonctionnelle*, Collection Mathématiques Appliquées pour la Maîtrise. [Collection of Applied Mathematics for the Master's Degree], Masson, Paris, 1983, Théorie et applications. [Theory and applications]. MR 697382 (85a:46001)
- [Cor07] Jean-Michel Coron, *Control and nonlinearity*, Mathematical Surveys and Monographs, vol. 136, American Mathematical Society, Providence, RI, 2007. MR 2302744 (2008d:93001)
- [EN00] Klaus-Jochen Engel and Rainer Nagel, *One-parameter semigroups for linear evolution equations*, Graduate Texts in Mathematics, vol. 194, Springer-Verlag, New York, 2000, With contributions by S. Brendle, M. Campiti, T. Hahn, G. Metafunne, G. Nickel, D. Pallara, C. Perazzoli, A. Rhandi, S. Romanelli and R. Schnaubelt. MR 1721989
- [Erv17] S. Ervedoza, *Carleman estimates for elliptic PDEs and applications*, <http://www.lama.univ-savoie.fr/ContrOpt2017/Slides/Slides-Ervedoza-ContrOpt2017.pdf>, 2017, Exposé à l'école ContrOpt 2017 à Monastir.
- [FCGBdT10] Enrique Fernández-Cara, Manuel González-Burgos, and Luz de Teresa, *Boundary controllability of parabolic coupled equations*, *Journal of Functional Analysis* **259** (2010), no. 7, 1720–1758.
- [FI96] A. V. Fursikov and O. Yu. Imanuvilov, *Controllability of evolution equations*, Lecture Notes Series, vol. 34, Seoul National University, Research Institute of Mathematics, Global Analysis Research Center, Seoul, 1996. MR 1406566
- [FR71] H. O. Fattorini and D. L. Russell, *Exact controllability theorems for linear parabolic equations in one space dimension*, *Arch. Rational Mech. Anal.* **43** (1971), 272–292. MR 0335014 (48 #13332)

- [FR75] ———, *Uniform bounds on biorthogonal functions for real exponentials with an application to the control theory of parabolic equations*, *Quart. Appl. Math.* **32** (1974/75), 45–69. MR 0510972 (58 #23325)
- [KBGBdT16] Farid Ammar Khodja, Assia Benabdallah, Manuel González-Burgos, and Luz de Teresa, *New phenomena for the null controllability of parabolic systems: Minimal time and geometrical dependence*, *Journal of Mathematical Analysis and Applications* **444** (2016), no. 2, 1071–1113.
- [KdT09] Otared Kavian and Luz de Teresa, *Unique continuation principle for systems of parabolic equations*, *ESAIM: COCV* **16** (2009), no. 2, 247–274.
- [LR95] G. Lebeau and L. Robbiano, *Contrôle exact de l'équation de la chaleur*, *Communications in Partial Differential Equations* **20** (1995), no. 1-2, 335–356.
- [LRL11] Jérôme Le Rousseau and Gilles Lebeau, *On Carleman estimates for elliptic and parabolic operators. applications to unique continuation and control of parabolic equations*, *ESAIM: COCV* **18** (2011), no. 3, 712–747.
- [Oli14] Guillaume Olive, *Boundary approximate controllability of some linear parabolic systems*, *Evolution Equations and Control Theory* **3** (2014), no. 1, 167–189.
- [Sei88] Thomas I. Seidman, *How violent are fast controls?*, *Mathematics of Control, Signals, and Systems* **1** (1988), no. 1, 89–95.
- [TW09] Marius Tucsnak and George Weiss, *Observation and control for operator semigroups*, *Birkhäuser Advanced Texts: Basler Lehrbücher*. [Birkhäuser Advanced Texts: Basel Textbooks], Birkhäuser Verlag, Basel, 2009. MR 2502023
- [Zab07] Jerzy Zabczyk, *Mathematical control theory*, Birkhäuser, 2007.